

# Discover China



STUDENT'S BOOK ONE

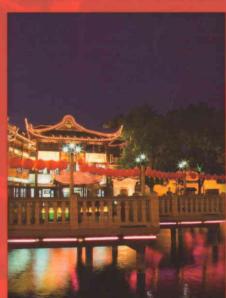
学生用书1

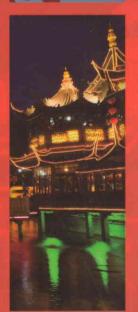


















Macmillan Education
Between Towns Road, Oxford, OX4 3PP
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited
Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 9780230405950

Text © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010

Design and illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010

Published by arrangement with Macmillan Publishers (China) Limited

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Project Planning: Bernadette Longley, Peng Donglin
Project management: Bernadette Longley, Hou Hui
Head author: Dlng Anqi
Author team: Chen Xin, Jing Lill
Academic advisors: Simon Greenall, Huang Dian, C.K. Tang
Editors: Yan Lina, Wang Jianling, Thomas McGrenery and Mei Liew

Audio materials produced by Sky Productions

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce their artwork/photographic material:

Imagemore: pp19 (rm), 20 (br), 22 (bl), 23 (tr), 24 (background), 26 (a-c, e), 30 (t), 34 (background), 38 (la, b, d), 41 (ld), 42 (t), 44 (background), 49 (a, b), 50 (b), 54 (background), 56 (ltl, ltr, lm), 59 (rt), 60 (lt, rb), 62 (l), 63 (r), 66 (b), 67 (lt), 68 (background), 75 (la, c), 76 (t), 77 (top), 78 (background), 85 (la,b), 86 (lb), 88 (background), 90 (c), 95 (lb), 96 (rb), 98 (background), 104 (background), 112 (background), 116 (b, e), 119 (lb), 120 (l), 122 (l, background), 126 (b, d, e, f), 129 (b, c, d), 130 (l, bottom), 132 (background), 134 (ml, mr), 139 (la-d), 141 (t), 142 (background), 144 (r), 148 (background), 151 (br), 154 (bl); Tuweimei: pp26(d), 31 (a-d), 36 (la, r), 38 (lc, l, bottom), 41 (lb, c), 46 (rt), 48 (lt, rt), 49 (c, d), 56 (rt), 57 (la-f), 59 (rm), 62 (ra-c), 75 (lb, d), 85 (lc, d), 90 (a, b, d), 92 (ba-e), 95 (la, c, d), 100 (a, c, e), 103 (r), 106 (la, d), 109 (la, c, d), 116 (a, c, d, f), 119 (la, c, d), 126 (a, c), 129 (a), 134 (tr), 136 (a, b, c, d), 150, 151 (tl, tr), 152 (b), 153 (l, r), 154 (a-d), 155 (t), 156, 157 (tl, tr), 158 (b), 159 (r), 160 (br), 161 (t); Top Photo Corporation: pp14 (bottom), 17, 27, 37, 47, 81, 91, 105, 115, 122 (lc), 134 (tl), 135; China Foto Press: pp13 (bl), 33 (r), 36 (c), 40 (lb), 49 (l), 61, 109 (b), 110 (top), 142 (lt, lb); Corbls: pp31 (b) © Natacha Connan/Didler Baverel/Kipa/Corbis; Photolibrary: pp151 (bl), 157 (tl); Simon Lorenz: p52.

Cover photographs by Panorama Media (tr), (m), (bl); Tuweimei (tl), (br).

Commissioned photographs © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010

We would also like to thank the following reviewers and teachers for their valuable and insightful comments:

Lening Liu (Professor in Chinese Language and Program Director at Columbia University), Huang Dian (Senior lecturer in Chinese at the University of Westminster and Chair of the British Chinese Language Teaching Society) and her pilot class, Dr. Song Lianyi (Principal Teaching Fellow in Chinese, China & Inner Asia Department, School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London), Liao Liyun (Modern Foreign Language Academic Resources Coordinator, University College London) and her pilot class, and Liang Min-Min (Lecturer in Chinese, Massachusetts Institute of Technology), Betty Hung (Assistant Language Instructor, School of Chinese, The University of Hong Kong).

These materials may contain links for third party websites. We have no control over, and are not responsible for, the contents of such third party websites. Please use care when accessing them.

Although we have tried to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, in some cases this has not been possible. If contacted, we will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest opportunity.

Printed and bound in China

2015 2014 2013 2012 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

# Discover China



STUDENT'S BOOK ONE

学生用书1





## Introduction

Discover China is a four-level Mandarin Chinese course, specially designed for beginner to intermediate level students studying Chinese in English-speaking countries. It employs a communicative and integrated approach to language learning. Emphasis is placed on communication in real contexts through pair work, group work and a variety of independent and integrated activities to help students become confident Chinese language speakers.

# **Key features**

Discover China's unique communicative course design includes a number of distinctive features:

- Topic-driven content in real-life contexts gets students engaged and motivated. The topics in each book are organized around the lives and travel experiences of five young students in China.
- A truly communicative approach lets students learn the language by using it in real-life situations, providing them with the tools they need to communicate in Chinese naturally.
- Structured and effective learning design based on the sequence "presentation, practice and production", with activities moving from controlled practice to personalized tasks, facilitates effective learning of the language.
- Systematic vocabulary and grammar development comes through topic-based practice and extension exercises. The lexical syllabus is based on levels 1-4 of the Hanyu Shuiping Kaoshi (HSK test) and the grammatical syllabus takes students up to the Vantage level (level B2) of the Common European Framework.
- Student-centred grammar learning supplemented with detailed grammar reference allows students to discover the rules for themselves through identifying patterns in the language samples. The grammar reference provides comprehensive and detailed explanations.

- Meaningful and integrated character writing practice through grouping characters with common radicals. These high-frequency characters are presented within the context of the unit theme.
- Insights into Chinese culture, through "Cultural Corner" sections linked to the unit topics, promoting a deeper cultural understanding. Fascinating fullcolour photos, showing the real China, provide visual appeal and draw students into this diverse culture.
- Simplified Chinese characters are used to facilitate learning of the written language used by the majority of Chinese speakers.
- Pinyin matched to the word level instead of individual characters helps students understand how to write and space pinyin meaningfully. Discover China follows the official pinyin orthography of mainland China. All pinyin shows the character's original tone, except in those parts of the pronunciation and speaking section where special rules about tonal change are introduced.
- Extra pair work activities for each unit provide additional communicative speaking practice.
- Supported by free online resources including teacher's books, assessment tasks, unit quizzes, extra character writing sheets and more.

# Workbook

The Workbook provides extensive consolidation of the language skills and knowledge taught in the Student's Book.

Each Workbook unit features clear language objectives which correspond with the Student's Book unit structure and activities. A wide variety of vocabulary and grammar exercises, as well as extra reading and listening activities, provide practice of the core language presented in the Student's Book. Writing practice sections give students the option to extend their Chinese character writing skills beyond the Student's Book requisites. A self-assessment at the end of each unit using "I can..." descriptors enables students to reflect on their individual progress.

# **Characteristics of each level**

Books 1 and 2 cover basic language relating to everyday topics. The focus is on listening and speaking, although there is a writing activity at end of each lesson 2. Character writing practice is available in both the Student's Book and Workbook to help students learn how to write Chinese characters with the correct stroke order.

Book 1 is for beginners who have not studied any Chinese. To avoid overwhelming students with character reading at the very beginning, pinyin is placed above all Chinese words and characters to provide the necessary language support. However, to help students develop character recognition skills, pinyin does not appear for conversations and passages in the Workbook. Activities in the online unit quizzes, which simulate test questions from the HSK test, have no pinyin.

Book 2 follows on naturally from Book 1. Pinyin is used only in activities with new words and phrases, and the activities in the pronunciation and speaking section of each unit. Most other activities in the book do not carry pinyin. However, versions of all the main conversations and reading passages with pinyin are available for download from *Discover China's* free resources website.

Books 3 and 4 cover language from school life and the work environment. The focus is on the development of language skills, which is conducted through various approaches including guided writing. The lessons contain activities to further enhance students' language skills in all areas across different contexts and functions. A new guided writing section teaches students how to compose natural texts following authentic-like texts. The conversations and reading passages are longer, and pinyin only appears in each unit's vocabulary boxes.

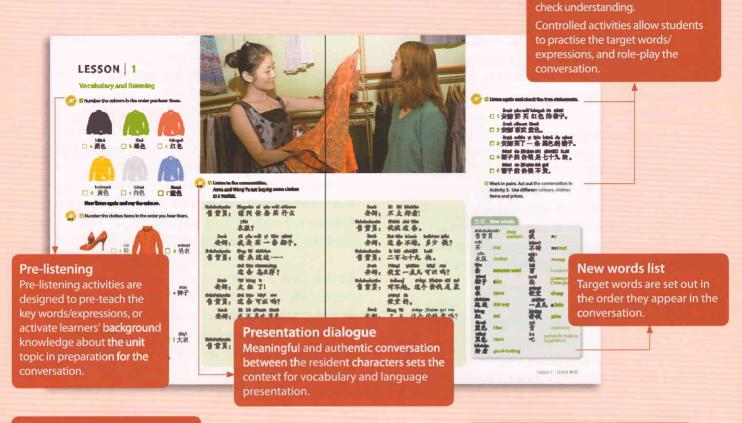
# **Storylines**

- Book 1 presents the fundamentals of the Chinese language, following the characters' day-to-day lives in Beijing. From simple introductions to going shopping, eating out or playing sports, students encounter a broad range of situations and learn the basic language skills they require.
- Book 2 includes "survival Chinese" for travel and living in China, as the characters hit the road on their winter holidays. They see the Terracotta Warriors in Xi'an and try authentic Sichuan food in Chengdu, make new friends and broaden their knowledge of Chinese to handle typical subjects such as food and drink, hotels, sightseeing and going to the doctor.
- Book 3 takes a deeper look at China's diverse culture.
   Steve lands his dream job and is sent on assignment as a photojournalist to exciting places all over China.
   Amanda pursues her love of Chinese history and undertakes a research project on a major historical figure. This provides students with rich exposure to the use of Chinese language across various cultural and social contexts.
- Book 4 prepares students for using Chinese for workrelated purposes. Mark takes up an internship at a Chinese organization in London, acting as a guide for a delegation from China. Wang Yu and Yeong-min volunteer at a summer camp in China, helping foreign students to understand Chinese language and culture. All three gain valuable experience in working with colleagues and customers, and dealing with different situations.



## **Unit structure**

Student Book 1 Unit 8 How much is it? 多少钱?



#### Pronunciation

Difficult pronunciation points for English speakers are presented and practised in context to prepare students for communicative activities in the unit.

#### Chinese to go

Simple and useful colloquial expressions or language "chunks" of immediate use are provided to learners.

#### Pre-reading

Pre-reading activities are designed to preteach the key words, or activate students' background knowledge about the unit topic in preparation for the reading passage.

Post-listening

Comprehension questions are used to





#### Reading

Reading texts cover a wide range of text types relevant to students' everyday lives, such as diaries, text messages, blogs and online profiles.

#### Post-reading

Controlled, guided and freer activities allow learners to practise the target language in a sequence that is most effective for learning.

94 - Unit 8 Lesson !

#### Grammar reference

Grammar reference at the back of the book provides detailed explanation of the grammar rules as a handy resource for both teachers and students.



#### Language in use

Grammar points are presented and practised through an inductive or "discovery" approach, drawing on students' existing knowledge.



不管聖教 龍 章 seyr 大衣

# ||ting = / ||6

青秋 metry がや 二十二个人 white sul 五十二岁

□ 件本服 4年 □ 代 Turn to page 168 for more information. the rules.

Short, simple examples

8hdragge 上个

help students analyse and

discover the grammar rules.

lläng jiàn 两件 yilu 衣服。

· 丁光水。

등 권하다 사 b shrike 3 관금 在 了 三年。

🔲 💲 🍸 is phase used below as

I He has studied Chinese for three years

Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.

The hought a pair of black shoes.
 They went to Shanghal.

Write the sentences in Chir

Exercises allow students to practise and consolidate

#### Communication activity

Meaningful and realistic communication through role-plays and speaking tasks.



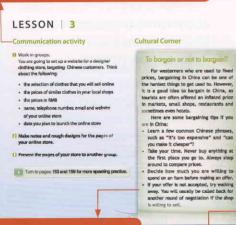
96 Unit 8 Lesson 2

· 玉 玉十二月十二日天丁 什么!

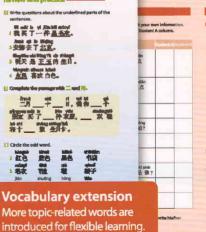
from the unit are introduced and practised to build students' vocabulary.



Builds on language acquisition by recycling previously learnt target language, through which students can also assess their progress.







#### **Cultural Corner**

Cultural points linked to the unit topic enable a greater understanding and appreciation of Chinese life and culture.

> Practice writing common characters following prepares students for writing Chinese.



L MID 2 批准 # 中**(7**)的

神子以 中花 市场

上十

.

件 大水

chieshiii 4 衬衫 から 対 帽子

Vocabulary list

dâyî n. coat

All target words are presented in black and non-target words in colour for easy reference.

#### Additional speaking practice

Activities are functionoriented, requiring students to use relevant vocabulary and language points in realistic and contextualized ways.

# Contents

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing
Getting started Experiencing Chinese page 10	A brief introduction to the Chinese language	<ul> <li>Identifying the four tones</li> <li>Identifying sentences in Chinese</li> <li>Introduction to Chinese characters</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Introduction to radicals and using the dictionary</li> <li>The basic strokes</li> <li>The seven rules of stroke order</li> </ul>
Unit 1 你好! Hello! page 17	Greetings	<ul> <li>Identifying people's names and greetings</li> <li>Identifying surnames and given names</li> <li>Learning about Chinese names and meanings</li> </ul>	Introducing yourself
Unit 2 你是哪里人? Where are you from? page 27	• Countries • Nationalities	<ul> <li>Identifying someone's nationality</li> <li>People and their nationalities</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and giving information about nationalities</li> <li>Describing people, where they live and where they are from</li> </ul>
Unit 3 你做什么工作? What do you do? page 37	Occupations Family members	<ul> <li>Identifying someone's occupation</li> <li>Identifying information about family members</li> <li>A letter about one's family</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking and answering questions about occupations</li> <li>Asking and answering questions about family members</li> <li>Describing one's family members and their occupations</li> </ul>
Unit 4 他真高! He's so tall! page 47	People's     appearances     Favourites	<ul> <li>Understanding information about people's appearance</li> <li>Online profile describing favourite people and animal</li> </ul>	Describing people's appearances     Writing a personal profile
Review 1 page 57	A TOTAL S		CHICAGO STATE
Unit 5 这是我的电话号码。 Here's my phone number. page 61	Addresses     Contact numbers	<ul> <li>Identifying contact numbers</li> <li>Identifying postal and email addresses</li> <li>Text messages</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and giving information about contact numbers and addresses</li> <li>Writing addresses, telephone numbers and email addresses</li> <li>Responding to a text message</li> </ul>
Unit 6 今天几号? What's the date today? page 71	Birthdays     Invitations	<ul> <li>Identifying days of the week</li> <li>Identifying months and dates</li> <li>Daily activities on a weekly planner</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and saying dates and days</li> <li>Making invitations</li> <li>Creating personal calendars</li> </ul>

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner	Character Practice
Words used for classroom expressions     Numbers 1 to 10	Introduction to pinyin and the four tones		
Word order of Chinese sentences (I)     Verbs 叫, 姓, 是     Questions ending with 呢     Greeting words     Words used to introduce people	The four tones	Is your surname Ding or Yuan?	Radicals 1 and 女
<ul> <li>Yes/no questions ending with 吗</li> <li>Questions with interrogative pronoun 哪里 / 哪</li> <li>Negative adverb 不</li> <li>Country names, nationalities</li> </ul>	The four tones	Is he speaking Chinese?	Radicals 口 and 日
Adverbs 也 / 都     Word order of Chinese sentences (II)     Pronouns as modifiers (+的)     Occupations, family members	The finals: α, e, i	Times change, job preferences change!	Radicals → and 戊 (right)
<ul> <li>Interrogative pronoun 谁</li> <li>Numbers in Chinese</li> <li>Asking about age using 多大</li> <li>真 / 很 + adjective</li> <li>Adjectives to describe people's appearance</li> </ul>	The finals: ao, uei, en	I was born in the Year of the Horse.	Radicals ± and ;
• Question word 多少 • Word order of Chinese addresses • Telephone and room numbers • Text message terms • Words for addresses and contact numbers	•The tones of 不 •The number "1"	The Chinese way of thinking: from large to small	Radicals i and i
Months and dates     Sentences without verbs     Making invitations using 请     Dates, days of the week and months, daily activities	The initials: j, q, x	Lucky numbers in China	Radicals 月 and 扌

e pointments thes pping ations ertisements	<ul> <li>Identifying time expressions</li> <li>Schedules and daily activities</li> <li>Activities on a weekend planner</li> <li>Identifying clothes, colours and prices</li> <li>A blog about life in Beijing</li> <li>Identifying locations and directions of places</li> <li>Advertisements for student housing</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and telling the time</li> <li>Making appointments</li> <li>Creating a weekend planner</li> </ul> Talking about clothes <ul> <li>Asking for items, prices and bargaining when shopping</li> <li>Writing a blog</li> </ul> Describing locations <ul> <li>Asking for and giving directions</li> <li>Writing an advertisement for a house or flat</li> </ul>
pping	Prices     A blog about life in Beijing      Identifying locations and directions of places     Advertisements for student housing	<ul> <li>Asking for items, prices and bargaining when shopping</li> <li>Writing a blog</li> <li>Describing locations</li> <li>Asking for and giving directions</li> <li>Writing an advertisement for a</li> </ul>
	directions of places  • Advertisements for student housing	<ul><li>Asking for and giving directions</li><li>Writing an advertisement for a</li></ul>
	directions of places  • Advertisements for student housing	<ul><li>Asking for and giving directions</li><li>Writing an advertisement for a</li></ul>
portation	<ul> <li>Identifying different types of transport</li> <li>Travel plans</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Talking about types of transport</li> <li>Discussing which types of transport to take</li> <li>Completing an email invitation</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Identifying different types of sport</li> <li>A lifestyle questionnaire</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking and answering questions about sports</li> <li>Talking about likes and dislikes</li> <li>Answering a questionnaire</li> <li>Describing one's recreational activities</li> </ul>
ay plans	<ul> <li>Identifying preferences for holiday plans</li> <li>Online chat messages</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking and answering questions about holiday plans</li> <li>Responding to an online chat message</li> </ul>
1. 62		
	rts s and dislikes ay plans	sport A lifestyle questionnaire  Identifying preferences for holiday plans Online that messages

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner	Character Practice
Adverbial expressions of time     Different ways of telling the time     Expressing future tense with 要     Words for time, daily activities	Difference between "u" and "ü"	Too late or too early?	Radicals 门 and 문
・Measure words ・Numerals 二 and 两 ・Expressing past tense using 了 ・Clothes items, colours, places in a city	The tones of —	To bargain or not to bargain?	Radicals 孝 and 贝
<ul> <li>Expressing existence using 有</li> <li>Asking questions using 有没有</li> <li>Expressing locations with the verb 在</li> <li>Directions, places and types of student housing</li> </ul>	Retroflex"r"	How far is really far?	Radicals 木 and 彳
<ul> <li>Alternative questions with 还是</li> <li>Questions ending with 好吗</li> <li>Expressing superlatives with 最</li> <li>Using the particle 吧</li> <li>Modes of transport and holiday activities</li> </ul>	Difference between "q" and "ch"	China—a kingdom of bicycles	Radicals 又 and 饣
- Using modal verbs 可以 and 会 - Pivotal sentences - Talking about past actions with 过 - Types of sports, abilities	Difference between "zh" and "ch"	Dance: a popular pastime	Radicals 王 and 钅
· Expressing alternatives using 或者 and 还是 · Expressing regular events with 每······都······ · Cities in China, holiday activities	Sentence intonation	Chinese kung fu	Radicals ** and 禾
Pinyin guide page 172 English translations page 173	Vocabulary list	page 178	

# **GETTING STARTED Experiencing Chinese**

# LESSON 1

# **Pronunciation and listening**

#### Putonghua and pinyin

Putonghua is the Chinese expression for Mandarin Chinese. It means "common language". Pinyin is a phonetic spelling system for Chinese characters, which uses the Roman alphabet. Pinyin is not just useful for foreign learners of Chinese, it is also used to teach the standard pronunciation of Putonghua to Chinese people who speak other dialects.



1	Listen to the following words in Chinese. Check the four
	words containing sounds which don't exist in English.

_	
	aina
	qiiiq

П	xie

49.71
nu

	ren

□ ta

### Chinese pronunciation

Most Chinese syllables consist of an "initial" consonant followed by a "final". Finals consist of vowels, which may be followed by -n or -ng. Finals may occur without initials. Note that not all the initials and finals can be combined.

Chinese initials:

b/p/m/f/d/t/n/l/g/k/h/j/q/x/zh/ch/sh/ r/z/c/s

Chinese finals:

a/o/e/i/u/ü/qi/ei/qo/ou/iq/ie/ug/uo/ üe/igo/iou/ugi/uei/gn/en/in/ign/ugn/uen/ ün/üan/ang/eng/ing/iang/uang/ueng/ong/ iong/er/ê/-i/-i

Chinese pronunciation is not especially difficult for English speakers because most of the sounds are quite similar to those in English. There are only a few sounds that are tricky for English speakers, for example, q, x, r and ü.

Turn to page 172 for more information about pinyin.

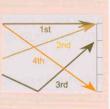


Listen and circle the characters with the same tones.

#### **Tones**

Chinese is a tonal language. There is a tone for every syllable. We can use different tones with the same syllable to express different meanings.

Mandarin has four tones. It is important to pronounce the tones correctly because change of tones will change the meaning. The four tones are depicted graphically with



this chart, to show where each tone occurs in tonal space. There is also a neutral tone in spoken Mandarin. It is light, flat and should not be emphasized. The neutral tone is used at the end of a phrase or with sentence particles.

The following table illustrates tone markings above the sound ma and describes how each tone is pronounced:

Tone	Mark	Description
first	mā	high and level
second	má	starts medium in tone, then
Second		rîses to the top
third	mă	starts low, dips to the bottom,
uma	third ma	then rises towards the top
fourth	mà	starts at the top, then falls sharply
lourth	rourth ma	and strongly to the bottom
neutral	ma	flat, with no emphasis



Listen and check the tones you hear.

1 🔲 zhōng 🔲 zhòng

3 🔲 nĭ

2 wén wèn

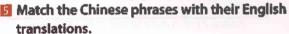
4 🗌 hảo 🔲 háo

# **Vocabulary and speaking**

Listen and say the words. Make sure you use the correct tones.

xué 学	study	kàn 看	look, see
dú 读	read	w <del>à</del> n 问	ask
xiě 写	write	shuō 说	say, speak
tīng 听	listen	qǐng 请	please

Turn to page 14 for more classroom expressions.



translations.	
Nǐ hǎo ma 1 你好吗?	a I'm sorry.
Lǎoshī hǎo 2 老师 好!	b You're welcome.
Zàijlàn 3 再见!	c Hello, teacher!
Xièxie 4 谢谢!	d It doesn't matter.
Bù kèqi 5 不客气。	e Goodbye!
Duibuqi 6 对不起。	f How are you?
Méiguānxi	

g Thank you!

Now listen and say the phrases.

7 没关系!

# 6 Listen and say the numbers.

yī	èr	sān	sì	wŭ
-	=	Ξ	四	五.
one	two	three	four	five
liù	qī	bā	jiŭ	shí
六	七	八	九	+
six	seven	eight	nine	ten

Now check the numbers as you hear them.

#### Match the numbers.

γĭ	
1 -	a 1
liù 2 六	<b>b</b> 3
bā 3 八	c 9
qī 4七	<b>d</b> 6
sān 5 三	e 7
jiǔ 6 九	f 8

#### 8 Work in pairs.

Student A: Write down three numbers between 1 and 10. Do not show Student B your numbers.

Student B: Say three numbers between 1 and 10.

Student A: Listen for the numbers you have written.

Clap when you hear your numbers.

Now change roles.

Turn to page 149 for more numbers.

# LESSON 2

# Reading

- Look at the sentences in different oriental languages. Check the sentence in Chinese.
  - □ 1 彼は田中一男、日本人です。
  - □ 2 그는 김대성이라고 합니다. 한국 사람입니다.
  - □ 3 他叫王明, 是中国人。
  - 🔲 4 Ông đã gọi là Huang-fu, là người Việt Nam.

#### Chinese characters

A Chinese character (*Hanzi*) is a logogram used in writing Chinese. The *Kangxi Dictionary*, the most authoritative Chinese dictionary since the 18th century, contains approximately 47,035 Chinese characters, although a large number of these are rarely-used variants accumulated throughout history. Studies carried out in China have shown that literacy in the Chinese language requires a knowledge of only between 800 and 3500 characters.

In the Chinese writing system, characters are morphosyllabic, meaning that each character usually corresponds with a spoken syllable with a basic meaning. Chinese characters have also been used in other languages, most significantly Japanese, Korean and Vietnamese.

People often think Chinese characters represent pictures of the meaning, and from this we can deduce the meanings of the characters without being able to read them. However, only about 600 Chinese characters are derived from pictures, and even these characters have been standardized, simplified, and stylized to make them easier to write. As a result, we cannot easily see how the modern characters are derived from the original pictures. The graphics in the table illustrate some examples.



- Guess the meanings of the characters.
  Use the pictograms to help you.
  - 1 木 (tree)

林=

2 日 (sun)

明=

3 人 (person)

众=

4 火 (fire)

焚=

Look at the characters. The parts in red are the radicals of the characters.

妈 mā

悠

nín

厅 tīng

元

yuán

#### Radicals and using the dictionary

Chinese characters have radicals. To look up words in a Chinese–English dictionary, we need to:

- · identify the radical
- find the radical in the radical index
- find the whole character in the character index
- · look up the character in the main dictionary

#### 4 Work in pairs and use your dictionary.

- Find the radical of the characters in Activity 3 in the radical index.
- 2 Find the whole character in the character index.
- 3 Note the page number of the character and then look it up.

Now say what these characters mean.

5 Look up the characters in your dictionary. (The radicals are in red.)











# Character writing

#### Chinese characters: the basic strokes

We write Chinese with some basic strokes, six of which are shown below.

Basic stroke	English	Exa	mple
<b>N</b>	dot	小	六
	horizontal	-	Ξ
1	vertical	+	中
J	downward left	人	大
(	downward right	八	人
1	upward	打	江

These strokes combine to form more complex strokes.

Compare the simple strokes of — and 人, with the complex strokes of 露 (dew).

Remember that Chinese–English dictionaries are partly organized by the number of strokes each character has.

#### Chinese characters: the seven rules of stroke order

We always write character strokes in the same order, following seven rules:

1 horizontal before vertical	十丰
2 downward left before downward right	人八
3 from left to right	川朋
4 from top to bottom	三丁
5 from outside to inside	月问
6 from outside to inside, then closing	回国
7 middle before two sides	小水

6 Trace the characters in the boxes.





# **Classroom expressions**



# Classroom expressions used by teachers

Shàngkè Xiàkè 上课 下课。 Class has begun. Class is over. Qĭng zuò Qĭng jìn 请坐。 请进。 Please come in. Please sit down. Gēn wǒ shuō Qing ting 跟我说。 请听。 Repeat after me. Please listen. Hěn hảo Duì 741 That's right! 很好! Well done! Qǐng dú kèwén Qǐng huídá wèntí 请回答问题。 Please read the text. 请读课文。 Please answer the questions. Yǒu wèntí ma Zài shuō yī biàn 再说一遍。 有问题吗? Do you have any questions? Say it again. Dă kāi shū dào dì 打开书到第……页。 Open your books to page .... Qǐng kàn hēibǎn shū 请看黑板/书。 Please look at the board / your books. Liảng rén San rén yī zử zuò 两 人/三人一组做…… Work in pairs /groups of three to ... Nimen mingbai ma 你们 明白 吗? Do you understand?



# 0

# Classroom expressions used by students

Dì jǐ shēng 第几 声?

Which tone?

Nă yî yè 哪一页?

Which page?

Wǒ bù míngbai 我不明白。

I don't understand.

wǒ bù zhīdào 我不知道。

I don't know.

Wǒ yǒu yī gè wèntí 我有一个问题。

I have a question.

Zhè ge duì ma 这个对吗?

Is this correct?

Qǐng zài shuō yī biàn 请再说一遍。

Can you please repeat that?

qǐng màn diǎnr shuō 请慢点儿说。

Could you please speak slower?

zěnme dú …… 怎么读?

de pīnyīn shì shénme

…… 的拼音是 什么?

hànzì zěnme xiě

…… 汉字怎么写?

yòng Yīngyǔ Hànyǔ zěnme shuō …… 用 英语/汉语 怎么 说?

Wǒ kèyǐ qù xǐshǒujiān ma 我可以去洗手间吗?

Duìbuqǐ wò chídào le 对不起,我迟到了。

Xièxie lǎoshī 谢谢老师! How do you pronounce ...?

What is the pinyin for ...?

How do you write ...?

How do you say ... in English/Chinese?

Can I go to the toilet?

Sorry I'm late.

Thank you, teacher!



# Meet the characters

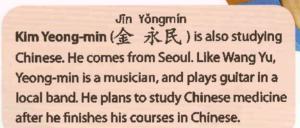
Măkè Mark Johnson (马克) comes from Australia. He went on holiday to China after completing high school in Brisbane, and decided to stay in Beijing to learn Chinese.



Wáng Yù Wang Yu (王 玉) was born in Beijing. She is at the same university as the others, studying music. She and Anna are language partners, as Wang Yu also wants to improve her English.



Ānnà Anna Pollard (安娜) is Mark's classmate, from New York. She is spending a year in China before returning to the US to complete her studies in International Relations.

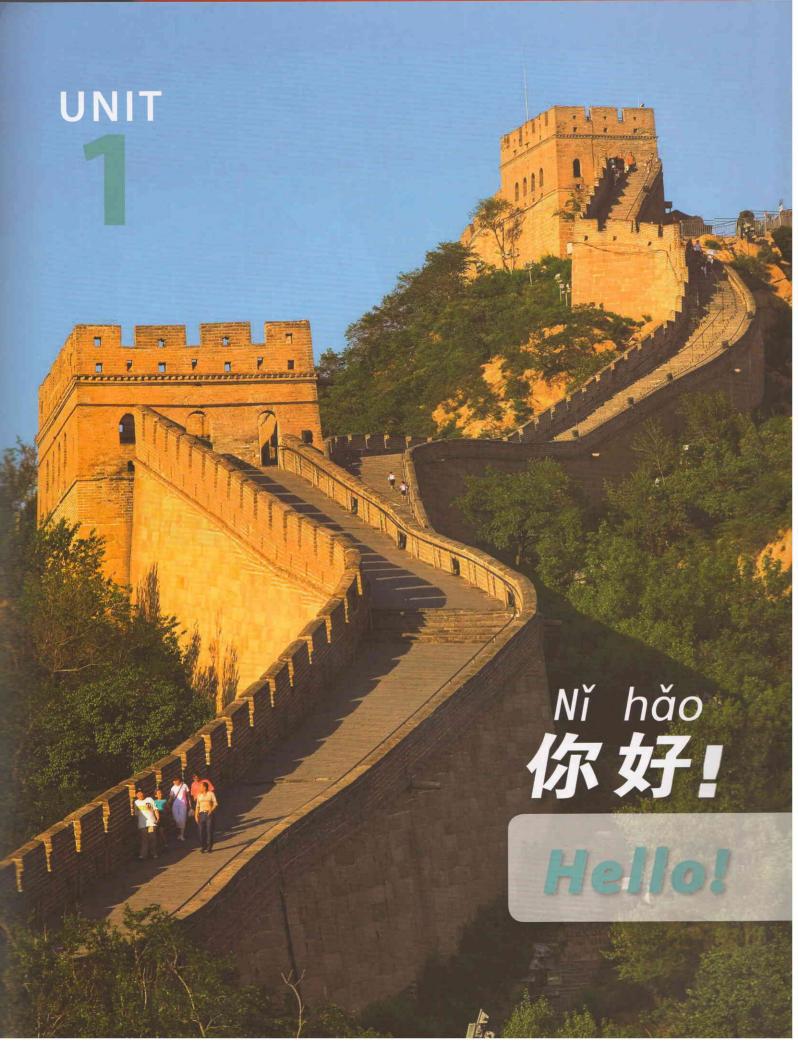


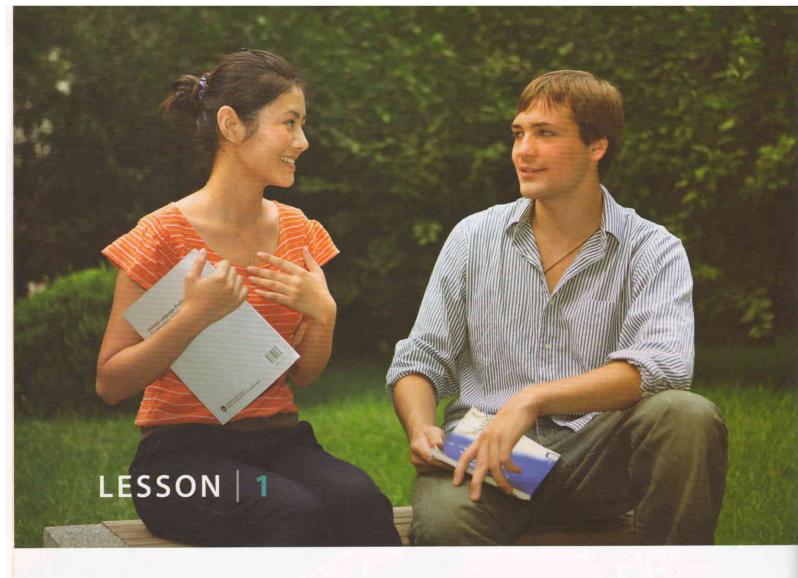


Shǐdìfū

Steve Brown (史蒂夫), another classmate of Mark and Anna's, comes from London. He is a few years older than the others, and has already graduated from university, where he studied economics. He works parttime for an international magazine.







# **Vocabulary and listening**



Match the words with the meanings.

nĭ hǎo	•
1 你 好	a you
qĭngwèn	
2 请问	b I, me
nĭ	
3 你	c may I ask
wŏ	
4 我	d hello
tā	

e she, her

f he, him

Now listen and say the words.



Listen to the conversation.
Mark is meeting Wang Yu for the first time.

Mǎkè Nǐ hào 马克: 你好! Wáng Yù Nǐ hào 王玉: 你好! Mǎkè Qǐngwèn nǐ jiào shénmemíngzi 马克: 请问,你叫什么名字? Wáng Yù Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù Nǐ ne 王玉: 我叫王玉。你呢?

5 他

6 她

## 生词 New words

nǐ hặc hello 你好 nĭ you 你 hăo good, OK 好 qĭngwèn may I ask, excuse 请问 me qing 请 please, invite wèn ask 间 îiào be called br shénme what 什么 mingzi name 名字 wŏ 我 I, me ne particle used to 呢 ask questions rènshi know, get to 认识 know hěn 很 very gāoxìng glad, happy 高兴 xiǎojiě Miss 小姐 duìbugi 对不起 sorry xìnq surname, family 姓

Mǎkè Wǒ jiào Mǎkè 马克:我叫马克, Mark Johnson。 Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng 认识你很高兴, Yù xiǎojiě 玉小姐。

Wáng Yù Duibuqǐ wǒ xìng Wáng 王玉:对不起,我姓王。



- Listen again and answer the questions.
  - 1 How many names did you hear in the conversation?
  - 2 What is the man's name in Chinese?
  - 3 What is the woman's surname?
- Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Use your own names.
- )-12 I

**5** Listen and number the conversations in the order you hear them.





Now listen again and complete the conversations.

# **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### The four tones



#### Listen and say the words.

nǐ hảo	nǐ ne
1 你 好	你呢
qǐngwèn	shénme
2 请问	什么
rènshi	gāoxìn
3 认识	高兴



## Listen and complete the conversation.

A: 你 好!	
B:	!
A:	?

Nǐ hảo

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù B: 我叫 王玉。 你呢? Wě jiào Měkě A: 我 叫 马克。

D.		
D		0



# Listen and say the words.

These words are often used for Chinese names.

#### Chinese names

Male	Female
huá	huā
华 splendid	花 flower
yīng	yíng
英 outstanding	莹 crystal clear
yú	yù
瑜 fine jade	玉 jade
wěi	wēi
伟 great	薇 rose

## Now check the best names for the following people.

1 a girl	sūn wĕi □孙伟	sūn Wēi □孙薇
2 a boy	Lǐ Zhōnghuá □李 中华	Lǐ Jīnhuā □李金花
3 a girl	Wáng Yùyíng □ 王 玉莹	₩áng Guóyīng □ 王 国英

## Work with the whole class. Introduce yourself to each of your classmates.

Nǐ hảo Wố jiào A: 你好! 我叫 ......。 Qǐngwèn nǐ jiào shénme míngzi 请问, 你 叫 什么 名字? Nǐ hảo Wǒ jiào B: 你好! 我叫 ·····。

# CHINESE TO GO



## Greeting people

Zǎoshang hǎo 早上 好! Good morning! Wänshang hão 晚上 好! Good evening! Hảo jiữ bù jiàn 好久不见! Long time no see!



# LESSON | 2

# **Reading and writing**



Annà 1 安娜

Shǐdìfū 2 史蒂夫

Mǎkè 3 马克





2 Read the conversation and answer the questions.

de Zhōngwén míngzi shì shénme

1 Mark的 中文 名字是 什么?

de Zhōngwén míngzi shì shénme

2 Anna 的 中文 名字 是 什么?

de Zhōngwén míngzi shì shénme

3 Steve 的 中文 名字是 什么?

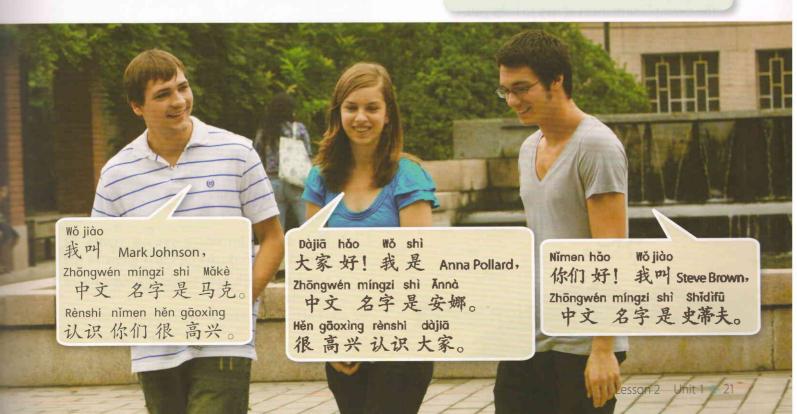
Complete the table with the correct information.



Work in groups and introduce yourself to the group. Use the conversation to help you.

#### 生词 New words

Zhōngwén nǐmen 中文 Chinese 你们 you (plural) shì dàjiā 是 be 大家 everybody



# Language in use

Word order of Chinese sentences (I)

#### Look at the sentences.

Cubiost	Predicate		
Subject	Verb	Object	
Wŏ	shì	Wáng Yù	
我	是	王玉。	
I am Wang	Yu.		
Wŏ	xìng	Wáng	
我	姓	王。	
My family r	name is Wang	g.	
Tā	jiào	Măkè	
他	叫	马克。	
His name is	Mark.		

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 A simple Chinese sentence is made up of the subject and the predicate.
- The predicate consists of a subject and an object.
- 3 The word order of subject-verb-object is similar to English.
- Write a simple sentence to introduce yourself. Use the example sentences above to help you.
  - Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.



# Verbs jiào xìng shì 叫 姓 是

#### Look at the sentences.

Nĭ jiào shénme míngzi 你叫 什么 名字? What is your name? Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù 我叫王玉。 My name is Wang Yu. de Zhōngwén míngzi shì Mǎkè Mark的 中文 名字是马克。 Mark's Chinese name is Mökè. Nǐ xìng shénme 你姓 什么? What is your family name? Wŏ xìng 我姓 Brown。 My family name is Brown. xìng Mark 姓 Johnson。 Mark's family name is Johnson. Tā shì Mǎkè 他是马克。 He is Mark. Tā shì Shǐdìfū 他是史蒂夫。 He is Steve. Tā shì Annà 她是安娜。 She is Anna.

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 When the verbs 叫, 姓 and 是 are used after different subjects, their forms change.
- The position of the question marker 什么 in a question is in the same place as its answer in a statement.
- □ 3 姓 is used to introduce one's surname, 叫 is used to introduce one's first name or full name, and 是 is used to identify someone or something.

2	Complete the sentences with the correct part	ts.
	of people's names.	

Wố jiào Wáng Yù wố xìng 1我叫王玉,我姓。

Nǐ xìng nǐ jiào Zhāng Wěi 2 你姓\_\_\_, 你叫 张 伟。

Wǒ shì Dīng Yún wǒ xìng

3我是丁云,我姓\_\_\_

Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

Questions ending with

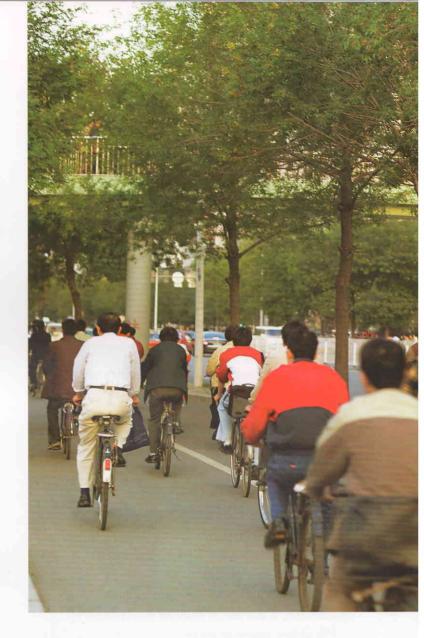
呢

#### Look at the conversations.

F	St	atement	Follow-up
	Subject	Predicate	question with 呢
A:	wŏ 我	xìng Dīng 姓丁,	nǐ ne 你呢?
В:	wŏ 我	xìng Wáng 姓王。	
A:	wŏ 我	shì Shǐdifū 是史蒂夫,	nǐ ne 你呢?
B:	wŏ 我	shì Mǎkè 是马克。	

#### Now answer the questions.

- 1 你呢 in Conversation 1 means Nǐ xìng shénme
  - a 你 姓 什么? Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
  - b 你 叫 什么 名字?
- 2 What does A in Conversation 2 want to know by asking 你呢?



Work in groups of three. Ask and answer questions with 呢. Use the prompts below to help you.

Wŏ xìng A: 我 姓 Smith, 你 呢?

Wŏ xìng

B: 我姓 Craven。

Wŏ jiào 我 叫 Angela, (ask Student C) 你 呢?

Wǒ jiào Wǒ xìng

C: 我叫 Miles。我姓 Brown, (ask Student A) nĭ ne

你 呢?

Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

# LESSON 3

# **Communication activity**

Work with the whole class. Say your Chinese name and ask other students their names. Use the prompt below to help you.

wǒ de Zhōngwén míngzi shì Mǎkè nǐ ne 我的中文名字是马克,你呢?

Now make a list of everyone's names.

Turn to pages 150 and 156 for more speaking practice.

### **Cultural Corner**

# Is your surname Ding or Yuan?

Chinese names are normally formed with two or three characters. The surname always precedes the given name. In the example "Ding Yuan", the surname is Ding, and the given name is Yuan. Surnames are generally one syllable, and given names usually contain one or two syllables. In Chinese, a person is seldom referred to by his or her surname alone.

The use of given names suggests a much closer relationship between the speaker and the person being addressed than in English. If one's given name contains only one syllable, like "Yuan", its use is even more limited. Even Ding Yuan's parents would most likely call him "Ding Yuan" at home rather than just "Yuan".

# **Character writing**

Radicals help to illustrate the meaning of Chinese characters. Look at the following character in ancient Chinese and guess its meaning.



ls your guess correct? Putting a woman (女) and a child (子) together means good (好).

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
1	man, person	你、他
<b>A</b>	woman	娜、姓

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

伟 姐 什 她

Match the characters with the meanings.

	nĭ		
1	你	a	good
	tā		
2	他	b	sumame
	hǎo		
3	好	c	you
	xìng		
4	姓	d	he, him

Trace the characters in the boxes.

你	KRRKKK
他	24 3-0 3-10 AV
好	K K K K K K K K K K K K K K K K K K K
姓	

# **Review and practice**

Match the words with the meanings.

dàjlā

- 1 大家
- a name

shénme

- 2 什么
- b know

míngzi

- 3 名字
- e what

rènshi

- 4 认识 gāoxìng
- d happy, glad

5 高兴

e everybody

aĭnawèn 6 请问

f hello

nǐ hảo

7 你 好

- g may lask
- Complete the word puzzle.



Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

> gāoxing 高兴

qĭngwèn 请问

jiào HI

Shĭdìfū nǐ jiào shénme míngzi , 你叫什么名字? 史蒂夫: Wáng Yù Nǐ ne

工 玉 玉。你呢? 王玉:我 Shǐdìfū Wǒ jiào Shǐdìfū 史蒂夫: 我叫史蒂夫。

Wáng Yù Rènshi nǐ hěn 王玉: 认识你很

Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

shénme jiào ni mingzi

1 什么 / 叫 / 你 / 名字 / ? shénme Wáng Yù xìng

2 什么 / 王玉/姓/?

shénme shì Zhōngwén míngzi de

3 什么 /是 / Mark / 中文 / 名字 / 的 / ?

Now answer the questions.

xìna

姓

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

shénme 什么

rènshi 认识

ne 呢

Nĭ jiào míngzi 1 你叫 名字?

nǐ hěn gāoxìng

你很 高兴。 Wǒ shì Wáng Yù nĭ

3 我 是 王 玉, 你 \_\_\_

iiào

King, 即 Sandra King。

6 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Nǐ xìng shénme

1 你 姓 什么?

Wŏ jiào Mǎkè

Wǒ xìng Wáng

a 我叫马克。 b 我姓王。

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi

2 你叫什么名字?

Wŏ jiào Shĭdìfū a 我叫史蒂夫。 b 我姓 张。

Wǒ xìng Zhāng

# **Vocabulary extension**

Read the passage.

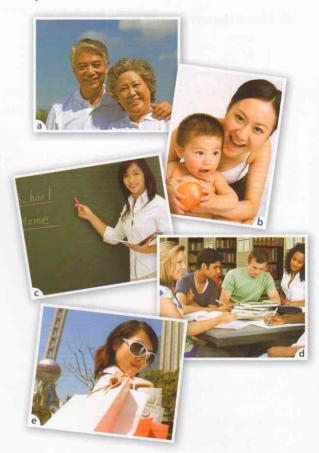
# Addressing people

We use the following titles when addressing people in Chinese:

xiānsheng 先生	Mr.	xîǎojiě 小姐	Miss
nůshì	Ms.	tàitaí 太太	Mrs.

On campus, the most popular way to address a stranger is to call him/her 同学 (schoolmate) or lǎoshī 老师 (teacher). Sometimes these titles can be used with names, for example, 李 先生 and wáng xiǎojiě 王 小姐.

Now look at these people and decide how you would address them.

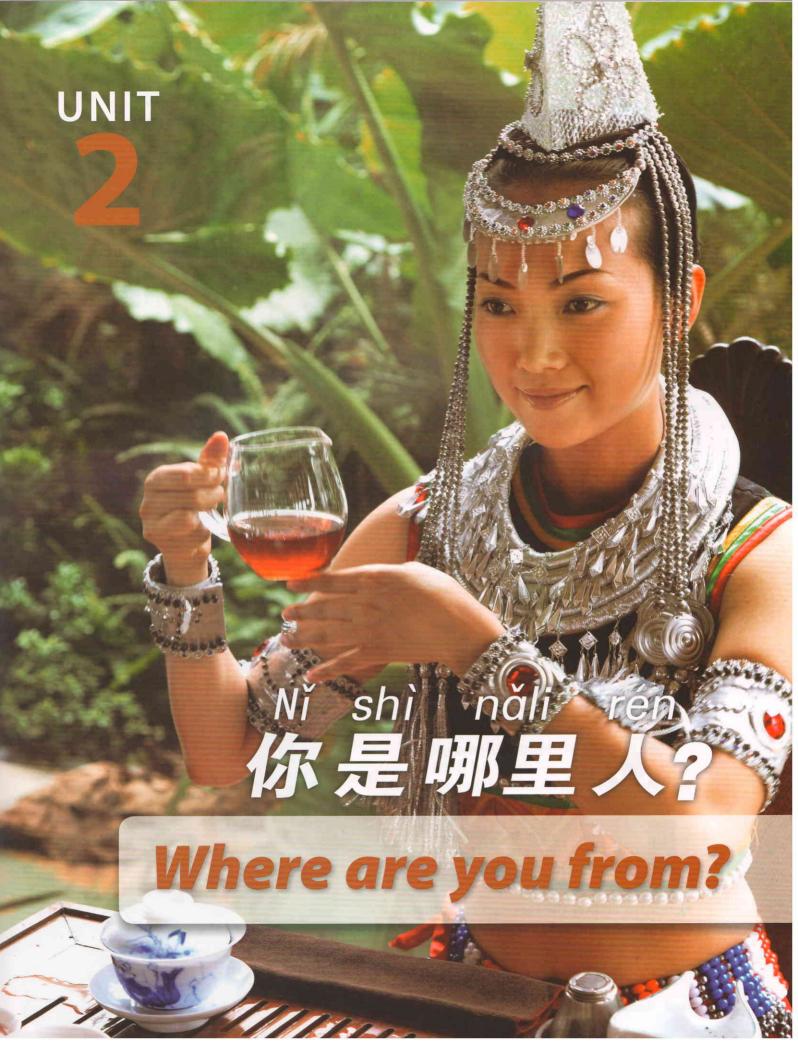


# **Vocabulary list**

你好	nĭ hǎo		hello
你	nĭ	pron.	you
好	hǎo	adj.	good, OK
请问	qĭngwèn		may I ask, excuse me
请	qĭng	interj./v.	please, invite
问	wèn	V.	ask
<b>拉</b> 力	jiào	<i>v.</i>	be called
什么	shénme	pron.	what
名字	míngzi	n.	name
我	wŏ	pron.	l, me
呢	ne	particle	(used to ask questions)
认识	rènshi	V.	know, get to know
很	hěn	adv.	very
高兴	gāoxing	adj.	glad, happy

小姐	xiǎojîě	n.	Miss
对不起	duìbuqĭ		sorry
姓	xìng	v./n.	surname, family name
中文	Zhōngwén	n.	Chinese
是	shì	V.	be
你们	nĭmen	pron.	you (plural)
大家	dàjiā	pron.	everybody
他	tā	pron.	he, him
她	tā	pron.	she, her
先生	xiānsheng	n.	Mr
女士	nůshì	n.	Ms
太太	tàitai	n.	Mrs
同学	tóngxué	ñ.	schoolmate
老师	lăoshi	n.	teacher

<sup>\*</sup> The words in colour are not target words for the unit.



# LESSON 1

# **Vocabulary and listening**

1,18

Match the flags with the nations and the people.



Hánguó Hánguórén a 韩国/ 韩国人



Mělguó Mělguórén b 美国 / 美国人



Jiānádà Jiānádàrén c 加拿大/加拿大人



Yīngguó Yīngguórén d 英国 / 英国人



Aodàliyà Aodàliyàrén e 澳大利亚/澳大利亚人



Făguó Făguórén f 法国 / 法国人



Zhōngguó Zhōngguórén g 中国 / 中国人



Rìběn Rìběnrén h 日本/日本人

Now listen and say the names of the nations and the people.



Listen to the conversation.
Steve and Wang Yu are talking about their nationalities.

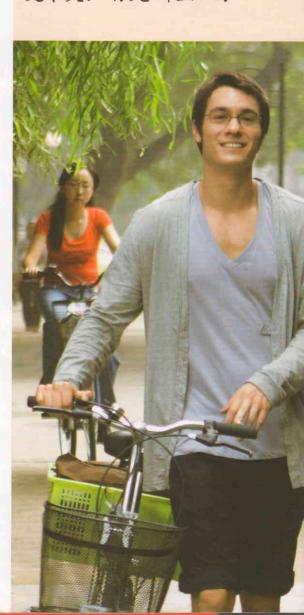
shidifū zǎoshang hǎo 史蒂夫: 早上 好! Wáng Yù zǎoshang hǎo 王玉: 早上 好!

shidifū Nǐ shi Riběnrén ma 史蒂夫: 你是日本人吗?

Wáng Yù Bù shì wǒ bù shì 王玉: 不是, 我不是

> Rìběnrén 日本人。

shǐdifū Nǐ shì nǎli rén 史蒂夫: 你是哪里人?



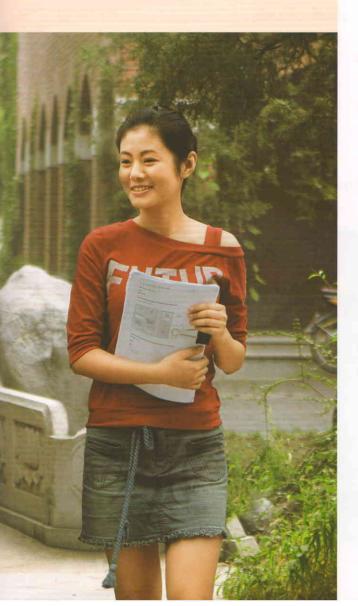
Wáng Yù Wǒ shì Zhōngguórén 王玉: 我是中国人。

Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén 你是哪国人?

Shǐdìfū Wǒ shì Yīngguórén 史蒂夫: 我是英国人。

Wáng Yù Nǐ zhù zài Lúndūn ma 王玉:你住在伦敦吗?

Shǐdìfū Bù wǒ zhù zài Běljīng 史蒂夫:不,我住在北京。



## 生词 New words

zǎoshang 早上	y hǎo good 好 morning	Zhōngguó 中国	China
Rìběn 日本	Japan	guó 国	country
rén	Supuri	Yīngguó	country
人	people	英国	UK
ma	particle used to ask questions	zhù 住	live
bù	askquesaons	zài	
不 nělí	not, no	在 Lúndūn	at, in
哪里	where	伦敦	London
nă	b.tab	Běljing	Dalling
哪	which	北京	Beljing

1-19	3	Listen	again	and	answer	the	questic	ons
1-19			-					

Wáng Yù shì Rìběnrén ma

- 1 王 玉是日本人吗?
  - Shǐdìfū shì năli rén
- 2 史蒂夫是哪里人?
  - Shĭdìfū zhù zài năli
- 3 史蒂夫 住 在 哪里?

## Complete the sentences.

- Wáng Yù shì
   rén tā bù shì

   1 王 玉是
   人,她不是

   Shǐdìfū shì
   rén tā zhù zài

   2 史蒂夫是
   人,他住在
- Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Use your own countries or cities.

# 6 Listen and check where the speakers are from.

Yīngguó	Hánguó
1 □ a 英国	<b>b</b> 韩国
Zhōngguó	Rìběn
2 口 a 中国	<mark>□ b</mark> 日本
Fǎguó	Àodàlìyà
3 🔲 a 法国	<mark>D 澳大利亚</mark>
Jiānádà	Měiguó
4 🔲 a 加拿大	□ b 美国



below.

# **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### The four tones



#### Listen and say the words.

zhù zài zǎoshang 1 住在 早上 Zhōngguó Běijīng 2 中国 北京 nǎ guó nǎli 3 哪 国 哪里



#### 2 Listen and check the words you hear.

rén rèn rèn 1 a人 b认 shí shì shì b是 hǎo hào hào 4 a 我 b 握

Nǐ hǎo Wǒ jiào nǐ jiào shénme A: 你好!我叫……,你叫什么 míngzi 名字?

Wǒ jiào rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng
B: 我叫 ·····,认识你很 高兴!
Nǐ shì nă guó rén
你是 哪 国 人?
Wǒ shì zhù zài Nǐ ne

Work in pairs. Introduce each other using the prompts

A: 我 是 ······,住 在 ······。你呢?

Wǒ shì zhù zài

B: 我 是 ······,住 在 ······。

Complete the sentences using the words in the box and your own information.

Lúndūn Měiguó 美国

Shǐdìfū zhù zài Běijīng tā bù zhù
1 史蒂夫住在北京,他不住
zàī
在\_\_\_\_。

Ānnà bù shì Yīngguórén tā shì rén
2 安娜不是英国人,她是\_\_\_\_\_人。

Wǒ shì rén wǒ zhù zài
3 我是\_\_\_\_\_人,我住在\_\_\_\_。

Now work in pairs. Read your sentences and compare answers.

# CHINESE TO GO



Talking about where people come from

Tā shì Běijīngrén ma 她是北京人吗? Is she a Beijinger? Wǒ bù zhīdào 我不知道。 I don't know. Tā shì Zhōngguórén 他是中国人。 He is Chinese. Wǒ yě shì 我也是。 Me too.

# LESSON 2

# Reading and writing

Match the pictures with the names of the places.









Nánfēi

Xīní

Mò'ěrběn

Hăoláiwū

1 南非 2 悉尼

3 墨尔本

4 好莱坞



Read the magazine and answer the questions.

shì nă quó rén

1 Hayden Christensen 是哪国人?

shì Měiguórén ma

2 Charlize Theron 是 美国人 吗?

shì nă guó rén

3 Russell Crowe 是哪国人?

shì năll rén

4 Nicole Kidman 是 哪里 人?Cate Blanchett 呢?

3 Work in pairs. Introduce someone you know who lives overseas.

Tā Tā xìng	jiào
他/她 姓	, pl

Tā Tā shì rén zhù zài 他/她是 人,住在

## 生词 New words

tāmen 他们	they, them	Nánfēi 南非	South Africa
Hǎoláiwū 好莱坞	Hollywood	Xinxilán 新西兰	New Zealand
míngxīng 明星	celebrity	Aodàliyà 澳大利亚	Australia
dànshì 但是	but	Xīní 悉尼	Sydney
Měiguó 美国	US	Mò'ěrběn 墨尔本	Melbourne
Jiānádà 加拿大	Canada		

Nǐ rènshi tāmen ma 你 认识 他们 吗?

Tamen shì Hǎolálwū míngxīng 他们是好莱坞明星。 Dànshì tāmen bù shì Měiguórén 但是他们不是美国人。

Havden Christensen Jiānádàrán 是加拿大人:

Charlize Theron shì Nánfēirén 是南非人; Russell Crowe shì Xīnxīlánrén 是 新西兰人:

Nicole Kidman

Àodàlìvà Xīnírén 是澳大利亚悉尼

Cate Blanchett Àodàlìyà 是澳大利亚 Nò' ĕrběnrén

墨尔本人。

# Language in use

Yes/no questions ending with

四

Look at the sentences.

Cubling	Predicate		Question
Subject	Verb	Object	particle 吗
Wŏ	shì	Wáng Yù	
我	是	王玉。	
Nĭ	shì	Wáng Yù	ma
你	是	王玉	吗?
Tā	xing	Wáng	
他	姓	王。	
Tā	xìng	Wáng	ma
他	姓	王	吗?
Ānṇà	shi	Měiguórén	
安娜	是	美国人。	
Ānņà	shì	Mělguórén	ma
安娜	是	美国人	吗?

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 III is used at the end of a question.
- 2 III is used to form a yes/no question.
- 3 The word order in a question ending with III is not the same as that in a statement.
- Check the sentences that can have added at the end to make guestions.

Shídìfū zhù zài Běijīng

□1 史蒂夫住在北京。

Nǐ shì nă quó rén

□ 2 你是哪国人?

Ní xìng shénme

□ 3 你 姓 什么?

Tā jiào Wáng Yù

□ 4 她叫王玉。

Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

Questions with interrogative pronoun 哪里/哪

Look at the sentences.

	Predicate		
Subject	Verb	Complement / Object (noun / 哪里 / 哪国)	
Wáng Yù	zhù	zài Běijīng	
王 玉	住	在北京。	
Wáng Yù	zhù	zàī nǎlì	
王 玉	住	在哪里?	
Tā	shì	Yingguórén	
她	是	英国人。	
Tā	shì	nă guó rén	
她	是	哪 国 人?	

Now check the three correct explanations.

- 1 The word order of questions is the same as that of statements.
- 2 The word order of questions is different from the order of statements.
- 3 哪里 is used to ask questions about place.
- 4 哪里 means "which country".
- Ask questions about the underlined parts of the sentences using 哪里 or 哪国.

Annà shì Měiguórén

1安娜是 美国人。

Shǐdìfū zhù zài Běijīna 2 史蒂夫住在北京。

Yŏngmín shì Hánguórén

3 永民 是 韩国人。

Tā zhù zài Xiní

4他住在悉尼。

Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

## **Negative adverb**



#### Look at the sentences.

Tā xìng WángTā bù xìng Wáng她 姓 王。她 不 姓 王。Tā shì YīngguórénTā bù shì Yīngguórén他是 英国人。他 不是英国人。

wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn wǒ bù zhù zài Lúndūn 我住在伦敦。 我不住在伦敦。

- 1 Underline the sentences which are affirmative.
- 2 Circle the character which shows that the sentence is negative.
- 3 Circle the verbs which are modified by 不.

#### Look at the sentences.

Nǐ bù shì Měiguórén ma Wǒ shì Wǒ bù shì 你不是美国人吗? 我是/我不是。 Aren't you American? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

#### Now check the correct explanation.

- □ 1 不 always comes before the subject.
- 2 不 usually comes before the predicate.

## 图 Rewrite the sentences as negative sentences with 不.

Nĭ shì Măkè

1 你是马克。

Wŏ shì Bĕijīngrén

2 我是北京人。

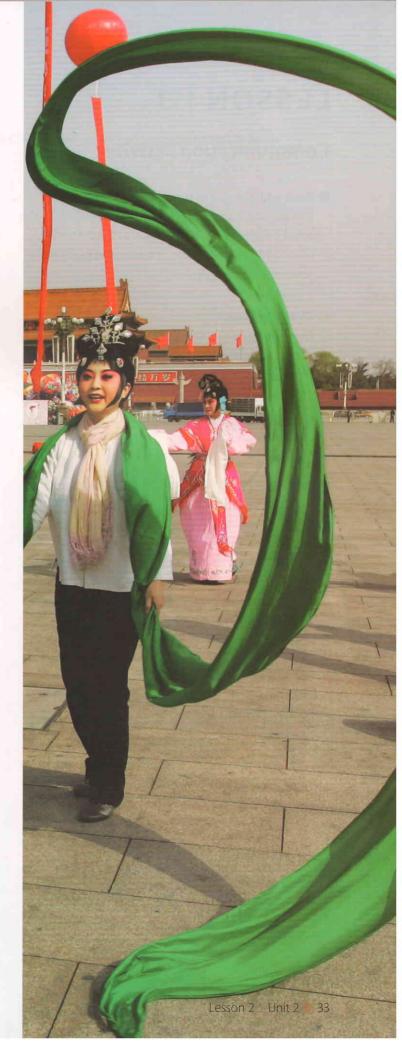
Tā jiào Wáng Yù

3她叫王玉。

Wő rènshi Shǐdìfū

4 我认识史蒂夫。

Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.



# LESSON 3

# **Communication activity**

Work with the rest of the class.

You are at a friend's party. Introduce yourself to the other people at the party, and ask them for their names and nationalities. Find out who is also from your country or area.

2 Work in groups.

Work with people who are from the same place as you. Discuss and list three interesting things about where you are from. Then tell the class about where you are from.

Turn to pages 150 and 156 for more speaking practice.

#### **Cultural Comer**

# Is he speaking Chinese?

In China, you might hear some Chinese people speak a language that is different from what you learnt in class. Most probably they are speaking another dialect of Chinese. There are many Chinese dialects, roughly classified into seven large groups: Mandarin (Putonghua), Gan, Hakka, Min, Wu, Xiang and Cantonese. Standard Mandarin was chosen to be the common language of China in the 1950s, to function as a lingua franca for the whole country. All Chinese dialects have some vocabulary in common, but people speaking different dialects cannot communicate or understand each other very well.

A distinguishing feature of the Chinese language is its tones. Mandarin has four tones and some dialects have even more. Despite the large differences among Chinese dialects, there is one thing they have in common—written Chinese characters.

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
	mouth	吗、呢
日	sun	早、是

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

名	哪	目	明
		,	

2 Match the words with the meanings.

jiào 1 대	a particle used to ask questions
mingxing 2 明星	b be called
zǎoshang 3 早上	c celebrity
ma 4 吗	d morning

3 Trac	te the characters in the boxes.
머니	
吗	<del>K</del> HRHH
早	
明	KKKKKKMMM

# **Review and practice**

1	Make	five	words	with	the	characters.
	14101120	11146	TTOINS	****	CHIC	CHICH CCC 13

zǎo	dàn	nă	shàng	shí
早	但	哪	上	识
shì	xīng	guó	rèn	míng
是	星	玉	认	印

# Complete the sentences with the correct words in brackets.

1	Nǐ shì 你是	rén	năli ? (哪里/	nă mm()
1	小走 Tā shì Yīng		tā	Lúndūn
2	他是英	国人,		伦敦。
	zhù zài z			
	(住在/	住)		
	Tāmen shì		mingxing	
3	他们是		。(明星 /	中国)

### Match the questions with the answers.

Wáng Yù shì nălî rén

- 1 王 玉是哪里人? Tā shì Zhōngguórén ma
- 2 他是 中国人 吗? Nǐ zhù zài Běljing ma
- 3 你住在北京吗? Tā zhù zàì nǒli
- 4 她住在哪里?

Tā zhù zài Lúndūn a 她住在伦敦。

Tā shì Zhōngguórén

b 她是 中国人。

Bù wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn

- c 不, 我住在伦敦。
  - Bù shì tā shì Rìběnrén
- d 不是, 他是日本人。

## 4 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Mǎkè shì Rìběnrén ma 1 马克是 日本人 吗?

> Mǎkè zhù zài Rìběn a 马克 住 在 日本。

Måkè bù shì Rìběnrén b 马克不是日本人。

Annà zhù zài nǎli 2 安娜 住 在 哪里?

Annà zhù zài Běljīng Annà shì Mělguórén a 安娜 住在 北京。b 安娜 是美国人。

Tā shì Shīdifū ma 3 他是史蒂夫吗?

> Tō shì Yīngguórén a 他是 英国人。

Bù tā bù shì Shǐdìfū b 不、他不是史蒂夫。

Nǐ shì nă guó rén 4 你是哪国人?

Nǐ shì Mò'ěrběnrén

Wǒ shì Yīngguórén b 我 是 英国人。

a你是墨尔本人。

**5** Complete the conversation with 哪, 吗 or 不.

Tā shì Ānnà A: 她是安娜\_\_\_\_\_?

Tā bù shì Ānnà tā shì
B: 她不是安娜, 她是Jane。

Tā shì guó rén A: 她是\_\_\_\_\_国人?

Tā shì Yīngguórén B: 她是 英国人。

Tā zhù zài Lúndūn

A: 她住在伦敦\_\_\_\_

tā zhù zài Xīní B: , 她 住 在 悉尼。

# **Vocabulary extension**

### Look at the names of nations.

Mòxīgē		Xînjiāpō	
墨西哥	Mexico	新加坡	Singapore
Kěnníyà		Déguó	
肯尼亚	Kenya	德国	Germany
Tàiguó		Yìndù	
泰国	Thailand	印度	India
Āljí			
埃及	Egypt		

## Now match the people with the nations.



Mòxīgē 1 墨西哥

Kěnníyà 2 肯尼亚

Déguó 3 德国

## 2 Write the names of the countries under the pictures.









Now say the countries aloud.

# **Vocabulary list**

早上好	zăoshang hảo		good morning
日本	Rìběn	n.	Japan
人	rén	n.	people
吗	ma	particle	(used to ask questions)
不	bù	adv.	not, no
哪里	nălî	pron.	where
哪	nă	pron.	which
中国	Zhōngguó	n.	China
国	guó	n.	country
英国	Yīngguó	n.	UK
住	zhù	V.	live
在	zài	prep.	at, in
伦敦	Lúndūn	n.	London
北京	Běijīng	n.	Beijing
他们	tāmen	pron.	they, them
好莱坞	Hăoláiwū	n.	Hollywood
明星	mingxing	n.	celebrity

但是	dànshì	conj.	but
美国	Měiguó	n.	US
加拿大	Jiānádà	n.	Canada
南非	Nánfēi	n.	South Africa
新西兰	Xīnxīlán	n.	New Zealand
澳大利亚	Àodàlìyà	n.	Australia
悉尼	Xīní	n.	Sydney
墨尔本	Mò'ěrběn	n.	Melbourne
韩国	Hánguó	n.	Korea
法国	Făguó	n.	France
墨西哥	Mòxîgē	n.	Mexico
肯尼亚	Kěnníyà	n.	Kenya
泰国	Tàiguó	n.	Thailand
埃及	Āijí	n.	Egypt
新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	n.	Singapore
德国	Déguó	n.	Germany
印度	Yìndù	n.	India

UNIT 3

Nǐ zuò shénme gōngzuò 你做什么工作?

What do you do?

# Vocabulary and listening



Number the people in the order you hear them.



jìzhě 〕记者



yīshēng □ 医牛



xuésheng 学生



hùshi 口护士

Now listen again and say the words.



Label the people in the picture with the words in the box.

> bàba 谷谷

māma 妈妈 jiějie 姐姐 dìdi 弟弟



Now listen and say the words.



**B** Listen to the conversation.

Mark is telling Yeong-min and Anna about his family.

Yǒngmín Tā shì nǐ mèimei ma 永民: 她是你妹妹吗?

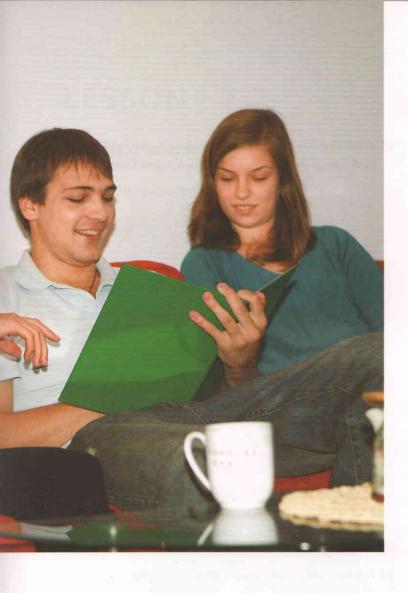
Mǎkè Shì tā shì wǒ mèimei Zhè 马克: 是,她是我妹妹。这

> shì wǒ dìdi 是我弟弟。

Yǒngmín Nǐ mèimei hé dìdi yě shì 永民: 你妹妹和弟弟也是

> xuésheng ma 学生 吗?

Mǎkè Wǒ dìdi shì xuésheng dàn 马克: 我弟弟是 学生,但 shì wǒ mèimei shì jìzhě 是我妹妹是记者。



Annà Nǐ bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò 安娜: 你爸爸做什么工作?

Mǎkè Tā shì yīshēng 马克:他是 医生。

Annà Nǐ māma zài nǎli gōngzuò 安娜: 你妈妈在哪里工作?

Mǎkè Tā zài yīyuàn gōngzuò Wǒ 马克: 她在医院工作。我

> bàba māma dōu shì yīshēng 爸爸妈妈都是医生。



## 4 Listen again and answer the questions.

Mǎkè de mèimei zuò shénme gōngzuò 1 马克的 妹妹 做 什么 工作?

Măkè de bàba zài năli gōngzuò

2 马克的爸爸在哪里 工作?

Măkè de māma shì yīshēng ma

3 马克的妈妈是 医生吗?

Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 3. Use the jobs in Activity 1 to help you.

生词 1	New words		
tā 她	she, her	bàba 爸爸	father
mèimei 妹妹	younger sister	zuò 做	do
zhè 这	this	gōngzuò 工作	work, job
dìdi 弟弟	younger brother	tā 他	he, him
hé 和	and	yīshēng 医生	doctor
yě 池	also	māma 妈妈	mother
xuésheng 学生	student	yīyuàn 医院	hospital
jìzhě 记者	journalist	dōu 都	both, all

# **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### The finals: a, e, i



#### Listen and check the correct pinyin for the words.

1 妈

□ a mā

b me

2 哪

□ a nĭ

□ b nă

3 者

☐ a zhě

b zhi

4 医

∏ a yī

☐ b yā



## Say the sentences aloud.

Zhè shì wǒ yéye

1 这是我爷爷!

Tā māma shì lăoshī

2 他妈妈是老师。

Lǐ Lì de bàba yĕ shì jìzhĕ

3 李丽的爸爸也是记者。

Nǐ dìdi shì yīshēng ma

4 你弟弟是 医生 吗?

## Now listen and repeat.



### Listen and say the words.

hé 1 和

yĕ 巾 zhè 汶

bàba

dìdi

mèimei

2 爸爸

弟弟

妹妹

yīshēng 3 医牛

jìzhě 记者 göngzuð 工作



## Work in pairs. Ask each other about your families, and complete the table with their names and jobs.

Nǐ bàba jiào shénme míngzi

A: 你 爸爸 叫 什么 名字?

Wǒ bàba jiào

B: 我 爸爸 叫 James Taylor。

Tā zuò shénme gōngzuò

A: 他做什么工作?

Tā shì yīshēng

B: 他 是 医生。

	Family member	Name	Occupation
1			
2			
3			
4			

## Tell the class about your partner's family.

Tā Tā bàba jiào

他/她爸爸 叫……, 他是……。

Tā Tā māma jiào

他/她妈妈叫……,她是……。



#### CHINESE TO GO

Talking about your family

Wǒ jiějie shì jǐngchá 我姐姐是警察。

My elder sister is a policewoman.

Zhên bàna

真棒! That's great!

# Reading and writing

## Match the pictures with the words.









yīyuàn 1 医院

zhàopiàn 2 照片

lăoshī 3老师

xuéxião

4 学校



## Read Wang Yu's letter about her family.



Shǐdìfū 史蒂夫:

> Nǐ hảo 你好!

Zhè shì wǒ jiā de zhàopiàn Tā shì wǒ 这是我家的 照片。他是我 bàba tā shì wǒ māma Tāmen dōu zài 爸爸,她是我妈妈。他们都在 yīyuàn göngzuò tāmen dōu shì yīshēng Zhè shì 医院工作,他们都是医生。这是 wò gēge tā zài xuéxiào gōngzuò tā shì 我哥哥, 他在学校工作, 他是 lăoshī Zhè shì wǒ jiějie tā shì jìzhě 老师。这是我姐姐,她是记者。 Zhè shì wǒ wò shì xuésheng 这是我,我是学生。……

#### B Check the true statements.

Nó bàba shì vishēna wǒ māma yě shì □ 1 我爸爸是 医生,我妈妈也是 yīshēng 医生。

Wǒ gēge shì xuésheng □ 2 我哥哥是 学生。

Wǒ jiějie shì hùshi

□ 3 我 姐姐 是 护士。

Wǒ shì xuésheng

□ 4 我是 学生。

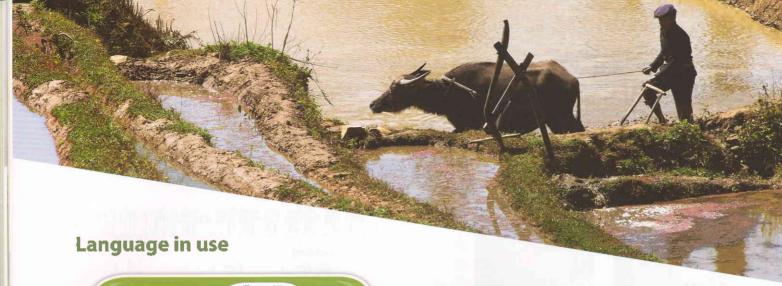
## Write about your family. Use Wang Yu's letter to help you.



wǒ shì Wŏ jiào 我叫\_\_\_\_\_,我是\_\_\_\_。

gõngzuò Wǒ bàba shì tā zài 我 爸爸 是 , 他在

#### 生词 New words xuéxião ìiā 家 family, home 学校 school de lăoshī structural 老师 的 teacher particle zhàopiàn jiějie 照片 姐姐 photo elder sister gēge 哥哥 elder brother



Adverbs

yě dōu **也/都** 

#### Look at the sentences.

Wŏ shì xuéshena 我是 学生。

I'm a student.

Măkè vě shì xuésheng

马克也是 学生 。 Mark is also a student.

Wǒ hé Mǎkè dōu shì xuésheng 我和马克都是 学生。

Both Mark and I are students.

### Now choose the correct word to complete the explanations.

- 1 The adverbs 也 and 都 are used (before/after) the predicate in a sentence.
- 2 The subject of the sentences with the adverb 都 should be (singular/plural).

#### 2 Look at the sentences.

Wǒ bàba bù shì yīshēng 我爸爸不是 医生。

My father is not a doctor.

Wǒ māma yĕ bù shì yīshēng 我妈妈也不是 医生。

My mother is not a doctor, either.

Wǒ bàba hé māma dōu bù shì yīshēng 我爸爸和妈妈都不是 医生。

Neither my father nor mother is a doctor.

#### Now check the correct explanation.

- □ 1 不 should come before 也 or 都 in a sentence.
- □ 2 不 should come after 也 or 都 in a sentence.

### **B** Rewrite the second sentence with tau.

Wáng Yù xìng Wáng

1 a 王玉姓王。

Wáng Yún xìng Wáng

b王云姓王。

Shǐdìfū bù zhù zài Lúndūn

2 a 史蒂夫 不 住 在 伦敦。

Măkè bù zhù zài Lúndūn

b 马克不住在 伦敦。

Shídìfū shì xuésheng

3 a 史蒂夫是 学生。

Wáng Yù shì xuésheng

b 王玉是 学生。

Wǒ bù rènshi Ānnà de māma

4 a 我 不 认识 安娜 的 妈妈。

Măkè bù rènshi Ānnà de māma

马克不认识安娜的妈妈。

Now join the two sentences with 都.

Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

#### Word order of Chinese sentences (II)

#### Look at the sentences.

Cubiost	Predicate			
Subject	Adverbial	Verb	Object	
Wŏmen	dōu	shì	xuésheng	
我们	都	是	学生。	
We are al	I students.			
Wŏ	bù	shì	lăoshī	
我	不	是	老师。	
I am no	t a teacher.			
Tā	zài yīyuàn	gōngzuò		
他	在医院	工作。		
He works at the hospital.				
Tã	yě zài yîyuàn	gōngzuò		
她	也在医院	工作。		
She also works at the hospital.				

#### Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 The adverbial often comes before the verb it modifies.
- 2 The adverbial usually comes after the verb it modifies.

#### Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

	不	shi 是	也 也	都
Tā		yîshēng		

- 1 他 \_\_\_\_ 医生。
- wo shì yīshēng wo shì lǎoshī
- 2 我 \_\_\_\_ 是 医生,我是老师。
- women shì lǎoshī women zài dàxué 3 我们是老师,我们 \_\_\_\_ 在大学 gōngzuò 工作。
- Wǒ zài yīyuàn gōngzuò tā zài yīyuàn 4 我在医院工作,她\_\_\_\_在医院gōngzuò工作。

## Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- Zhōngguórén shì bù Shǐdìfū 1 中国人 /是/不/史蒂夫/。
- Wáng Yù xìng bù Yù 2 王玉/姓/不/玉/。
- xuésheng bù shì Mǎkè vě
- 3 学生 /不/是/马克/也/。
- Měiguó dōu gōngzuò zài Tāmen 4 美国/都/工作/在/他们/。
- Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

Pronouns as modifiers



#### 11 Look at the sentences.

- Wǒ māma shì lǎoshī
- 我妈妈是老师。
- wǒ jiějie shì jìzhě 我姐姐是记者。
- Wǒ de míngzi shì Wáng Yù
- 我的名字是王玉。
- Wǒ de gōngzuò shì yīshēng 我的 工作 是 医生。

### Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 的 can be omitted when used before family members.
- 2 的 can be omitted when used before objects.

## Write the sentences in Chinese using meen necessary.

- 1 He is my father.
- 2 This is his photo.
- 3 My name is Mark.
- 4 This is my elder sister's photo.

## Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

# **Communication activity**

#### Work in pairs.

#### Student A:

You have just started a Chinese language course at Beijing Foreign Studies University. Look at the student registration form below and prepare for an interview with the Admissions Office secretary.

#### Student B:

You are the secretary of the Admissions Office at Beijing Foreign Studies University. You are interviewing students enrolled in a Chinese language course. Prepare interview questions based on the categories in the form.

#### xìngmíng niánling guójí 姓名 年龄 国籍 Name Nationality Age jinji 紧急 xìngming guānxì zhívè liánxirén 姓名 关系 即业 联系人 Name Relationship Occupation **Emergency** contacts 1 2 3

# Work in pairs. Act out the interview using the information you prepared in Activity 1.

Nǐ hǎo Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi 你好!你叫什么名字?

Nǐ shì nă guó rén 你是哪国人?

Nǐ de jǐnjí liánxìrén shì shéi 你的紧急联系人是谁?

Tāmen jiào shénme míngzi Zuò shénme gōngzuò 他们 叫 什么 名字?做 什么 工作?

Turn to pages 151 and 157 for more speaking practice.

## **Cultural Corner**

# Times change, job preferences change!

Job trends in China have changed enormously since the birth of the "reform and opening-up" (改革开放) policy in the late 1970s, encouraging private enterprises. Before that, being a worker or soldier was seen as very noble and desirable. Nearly all jobs guaranteed life-long careers, and jobs which provided security despite poor job performance were called the "unbreakable iron rice bowl" (铁饭碗). However, with economic reforms, civil service jobs and other government iron rice bowls were some of the first to go, and some civil servants left to open up private businesses. In more recent years, even without the old guarantees, civil service jobs have regained their old popularity, providing long-term stability and good benefits.

The last last last

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
2	roof	安、宾
ß (right)	city	都

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

家 邮 那 字

2 Match the words with the meanings.

	jiā		
1	家	a	both, all
2	ān 安	b	that
3	dōu 都	c	safe and stable
4	nà ∄K		family, home
	Jala.	-	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



## **Review and practice**

Put the words in the correct columns.

māma	dàxué	lǎoshī	yīyuàn
妈妈	大学	老师	医院
bàba	jiějie	yishēng	jìzhě
爸爸	姐姐	医生	记者

jiā tíng chéngyuán	difang	zhíyè
家庭 成员	地方	<b>职业</b>
Family members	Places	Occupations

Put the words in brackets in the correct places in the sentences.

Lín Yuè shì lǎoshī Lín Huá shì lǎoshī yè 1 林月是老师,林华是老师。(也)Tāmen shì lǎoshī dōu

2她们是老师。(都)

Jlékè bù shì xuésheng Hālì yě shì xuésheng bù 3 杰克不是 学生, 哈利也是 学生。(不)

Tāmen dōu shì xuésheng bù 4 他们都是学生。(不)

El Cross out the unnecessary in the sentences.

Wǒ de māma zài xuéxiào gōngzuò 1 我的妈妈在学校工作。 Wǒ de bàba de míngzi shì Lín Guó'ān 2 我的爸爸的名字是林国安。

Zhè shì wǒ de zhàopiàn 3 这是我的 照片。

**4** Write as many sentences as you can with 不, 也, 和 and 都, using the words in the boxes.

bàba gēge 爸爸 哥哥 māma jlějle 妈妈 姐姐

lǎoshī xuésheng yīshēng 老师 学生 医生 jìzhě hùshl 记者 护士

# Vocabulary extension

## 1 Think of people you know who have these jobs.

dǎoyóu 导游	tour guide	gōngchéngshī 工程师	engineer
lùshī	lawyer	fúwùyuán	waiter,
律师		服务员	waitress
chúshī	chef	xiūlǐgōng	mechanic,
厨师		修理工	repairman
mìshū	secretary	lǐfàshī	barber,
秘书		理发师	hairdresser

Now work in pairs. Tell each other about these people.

## ☑ Write the job names under the pictures.



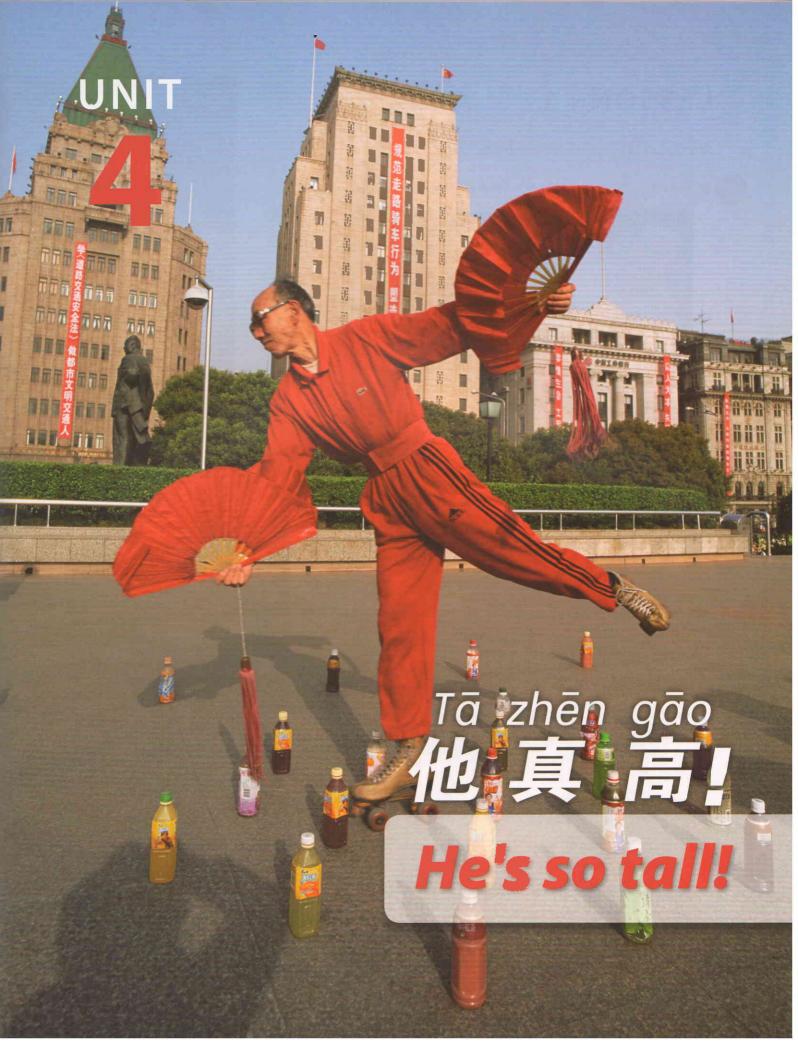






# **Vocabulary list**

她	tā	pron.	she, her	家	jiā	п.	family, home
妹妹	mèimeī	n.	younger sister	的	de	structural particle	
这	zhè	pron.	this	照片	zhàopiàn	n.	photo
弟弟	dìdi	n.	younger brother	哥哥	gēge	n.	elder brother
和	hé	conj.	and	学校	xuéxiào	n.	school
也	yě	adv.	also	老师	lăoshī	n.	teacher
学生	xuésheng	n.	student	姐姐	jiějie	n.	elder sister
记者	jìzhě	n.	journalist	护士	hùshi	n.	nurse
爸爸	bàba	n.	father	导游	d <b>ǎoy</b> óu	Π.	tour guide
做	zuò	V.	do	律师	lùshī	n.	lawyer
工作	gōngzuò	n./v.	work, job	厨师	chúshī	n.	chef
他	tā	pron.	he, him	秘书	mìshū	n.	secretary
医生	yīshēng	n.	doctor	工程师	göngchéngshī	n.	engineer
妈妈	māma	n.	mother	服务员	fúwùyuán	n.	waiter, waitress
医院	yīyuàn	п.	hospital	修理工	xiūlĭgōng	n.	mechanic, repairman
都	dōu	adv.	both, all	理发师	lĭfàshī	n.	barber, hairdresser



# Vocabulary and listening

Work in pairs. Discuss which adjectives describe these people.





gão □高 tall

niánaina □ 年轻 voung

kě' ài □可爱 cute

口酷 cool

shuài 口 帅 handsome

□矮

short

lăo 口老 old

piàoliang

□ 漂亮 pretty

Now listen and check the adjectives you hear.



Listen to the conversation.

Anna and Wang Yu are talking about Yao Ming.

Tā shì shéi Tā shì Yáo Míng shì ma Ānnà

安娜: 他是谁? 他是姚明, 是吗?

Wáng Yù 王玉·是。

> Tā shì nălī rén 安娜: 他是哪里人?

Shànghặirén dànshì xiànzài zhù zài Měiquó Wáng Yù

王玉:上海人,但是现在住在美国。

Ānnà Tā duō dà Sānshíwǔ suì 安娜: 他多大? 三十五岁?

Wáng Yù Wố bù zhidào 王玉: 我不知道。

Ānnà Tā zhēn gão 安娜:他真高!

Wáng Yù Yế hên shuài hên kù Tā shì wỏ zuì

王玉: 也很帅, 很酷! 他是我最

xihuan de lángiú yùndòngyuán 喜欢的篮球 运动员!





生词 New words
--------------

shéi 谁	who	gāo 高	tall
Shànghǎi 上海	Shanghai	shuài III)	handsome
xiànzài 现在	now	kù 酷	cool
duō dà 多大	how old	zuì 最	most
suì 岁	year(s) old	xǐhuan 喜欢	like
zhīdào 知道	know	lángiú 篮球	basketball
zhēn 真	really, so	yùndòngyuán 运动员	athlete



Listen again and answer the questions.

Yáo Míng shì năli rén

1 姚 明 是 哪里人? Yáo Míng zhù zài nǎli

Yáo Míng zhù zòi nǎli 2 姚 明 住在哪里? Yáo Míng zuò shénme gōngzuò

3姚明做什么工作?



4 Listen and number the people in the order you hear them.









Work in pairs. Choose a famous athlete you know and act out the conversation in Activity 2.

## **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### The finals: ao, uei, en

- Listen and number the sounds you hear.
  - □ do
- ui (uei)
- □ en
- 2 Say the sentences aloud.

Zăoshang hảo Gão lǎoshī

- 1 早上 好,高老师!
  - Suí lăoshī shì Suí Wēi de bàba
- 2 隋 老师 是 隋 薇 的 爸爸。 Chén Zhēn shì Shēnzhènrén
- 3 陈 真 是 深圳人。 Tā hěn shuài yě hěn kù
- 4 他很 帅. 也很酷!

## Now listen and repeat.

## Listen and say the words.

shéi 1 谁

zuì 最

suì 岁

duō đà 2 多大

lángiú 篮球

yùndòngyuán 运动员

xĭhuan

zhidào

xiànzài 现在

### 3 喜欢 知道

# Write notes about one of the people below.

#### 5 Work in pairs.

Student A: Tell your partner about the person you have written about in Activity 4, but do not say their name. Use your notes to help you.

Student B: Listen and guess the person's identity.

Now change roles.

# CHINESE TO GO

Welcoming and saying goodbye to guests

Qing jin

1-39

请进。

Please come in.

Mànzǒu

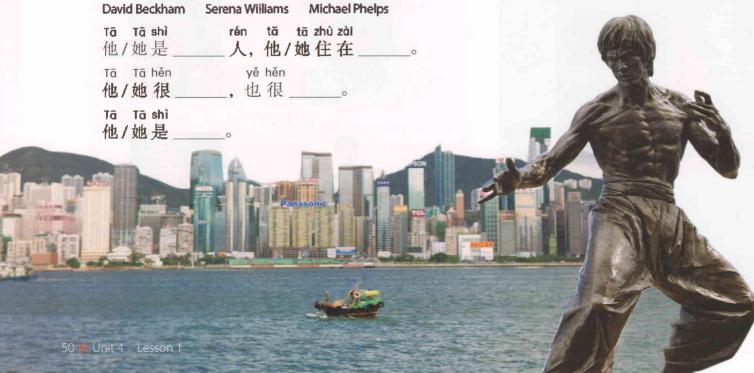
慢走。

Goodbye. (literally:

walk slowly)

Yīhuir jiàn

一会儿见。 See you later!



# Reading and writing

Match the words with the meanings.

xingming

- 1 姓名
- a place of birth
- niánlína 2 年龄
- **b** nationality
- chūshēngdì
- 3 出生地
- c full name
- quóií
- 4 国籍
- d age
- 2 Read Wang Yu's Sina profile and check the true statements.

Wáng Yù shì Shànghặirén

- □1 王玉是上海人。
  - Xlóngmão zhēn kù
- □ 2 熊猫 真 酷!
  - Yáo Míng hěn shuài
- □3 姚明 很 帅。
  - Lǐ Xiǎolóng hěn kě'ài
- □ 4 李 小龙 很 可爱。

B Answer the questions.

Wáng Yù duō dà

- 1 王玉 多 大?
- Wáng Yù de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
- 2 王玉的电子邮箱 是什么?
  - Wáng Yù zuì xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán shì shéi
- 3 王玉最喜欢的 运动员 是谁?
  - Wáng Yù zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi
- 4 王玉 最 喜欢 的 演员 是 谁?

## 生词 New words

xìngmíng 姓名 niánlína

full name

dòngwù animal 动物 xiónamão

年龄

guójí

age

panda 能猫

chūshēngdì 出生地

place of birth

kě'ài 可爱 cute

nationality

yănyuán 演员

actor, actress

国籍 diànzi youxiang email box/ 电子 邮箱 address



### 4 Match the questions with the information they ask for.

Tā duō dà

1 她 多 大?

Tā jiào shénme minazi

2 她 叫 什么 名字?

Tā zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi

3 她最喜欢的演员是谁?

Tā zuì xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán shì shéi

4 她最喜欢的 运动员 是谁? Tā zuì xǐhuan de dòngwù shì shénme

5 她最喜欢的 动物 是 什么? Tā de diànzi youxiāng shì shénme

6 她的电子 邮箱 是 什么? Tā de chūshēngdì shì năli

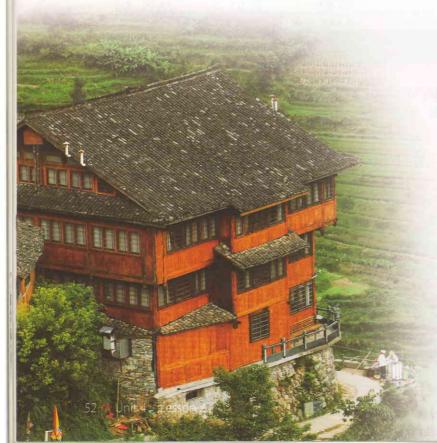
7 她的 出生地 是哪里?

xingming b年龄 a 姓名 chūshēngdì d 电子 邮箱 c出牛地 zuì xǐhuan de rén hé dòngwù e最喜欢的人和动物

Design an online personal profile for yourself.

niánlíng

diànzi yóuxiāng



## Language in use

Interrogative pronoun

Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		
(noun / 谁)	Verb	Object (noun / 谁)	
Tā	shì	wǒ mèimei	
她	是	我妹妹。	
tā	shì	shéi	
她	是	谁?	
Shéi	shì	nǐ mèimei	
谁	是	你妹妹?	
Wáng Yù	rènshi	Mǎkè	
王 玉	认识	马克。	
Wáng Yù	rènshi	shéi	
王 玉	认识	谁?	
Shéi	rènshi	Mǎkè	
谁	认识	马克?	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 The question word it can be used at both the beginning and the end of a question.
- □ 2 谁 means "who" or "whom".
- □ 3 谁 can only be used in a sentence with 是.
- Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences using 谁.

Tā shì wǒ māma 1 她 是 我 妈妈。

Wáng Yù shi wố mèimei

2 王 玉 是 我 妹妹。

Zhè shì tā bàba

3 这 是 他 爸爸。

Turn to page 164 for grammar reference.

#### **Numbers in Chinese**

#### Look at the numbers.

Chi	nese	English	C	nine	se	English
	shí 十	ten		shí 十	yī —	eleven
èr —	shí 十	twenty		shí +	wů 五	fifteen
sān 三	shí	thirty	èr —	shí +	_	twenty-two
sì 四	shí 十	forty	wŭ 五	shí +	bā八	fifty-eight

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Chinese numbers such as twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by adding an affix to the characters for 2 to 9.
- Chinese numbers such as twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by adding the character for 10 after the characters for 2 to 9.
- Chinese numbers such as eleven, fifteen, twentytwo, etc are formed by adding the characters for 1 to 9 after the characters for 10 to 90.

#### Write the numbers in Chinese.

1 fifty

2 seventy

3 twelve

4 thirty-three

Turn to page 164 for grammar reference.

Asking about age using



#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
Mǎkè 马克	duō dà 多大?	How old is Mark?
Tā 他	shíjiǔ suì 十九岁。	He is 19 years old.
tā tā 她/他	duō dà 多大?	How old is she/he?
Tā Tā 她/他	sì suì 四岁。	She/He is 4 years old.

#### Now answer the questions.

- 1 What does 多大 mean?
- 2 Where is 多大 positioned in the Chinese sentence?

## 2 Write questions for the answers using 多大.

Wǒ èrshí suì

Yŏngmín shíbā suì

1 我二十岁。

3 永民 十八岁。

Wǒ māma wǔshíyî suì

2 我妈妈五十一岁。

Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.



#### 1 Look at the sentences.

Cubicat	Predicate			
Subject	Adverb	Adjective		
Wŏ	zhēn hěn	gāoxìng		
我	真/很	高兴。		
I am really/ver	y happy.			
Nǐ māma	zhēn hěn	niánqīng		
你妈妈	真/很	年轻。		
Your mum is really/very young.				

#### Now answer the questions.

- 1 In the English sentences, which word appears before adjectives such as "happy" and "young", which is not used in Chinese?
- 2 Are there any differences in word order between these English and Chinese sentences?

#### Translate the sentences into English.

Yáo Míng hěn shuài

- 1姚明很帅。
  - Bàba zhēn gāo
- 2 爸爸 真 高!
  - Wǒ de lǎoshī zhēn niánqīng
- 3 我的老师真 年轻!
- Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

## **Communication activity**

Work in pairs. Choose the three coolest individuals of all time. Think about the reasons for your choice.

Name	Reasons to support your choice
míngzi 名字	lǐyóu 理由

shì zuì kù de yǎnyuán A: Bruce Lee 是最酷的演员, tā de Zhōngguó gōngfu hěn bàng 他的中国功夫很棒。 Wǒ xǐhuan

B: 我喜欢 Michael Jackson, tā shì zui kù de míngxīng 他是最酷的明星。



2 Work with another pair. Discuss your choice of the coolest people and explain your reasons.

Now vote for the coolest individual of all time.

Turn to pages 151 and 157 for more speaking practice.

## **Cultural Corner**

## I was born in the Year of the Horse.

The Chinese zodiac operates on a twelveyear cycle, using the following twelve animals: Rat, Ox, Tiger, Rabbit, Dragon, Snake, Horse, Sheep, Monkey, Rooster, Dog and Pig.

Each animal has certain characteristics that people born under the sign are said to share. Horoscopes were developed around these animal signs to predict a person's personality and destiny.

For example, people born in the Year of the Horse (1966, 1978, 1990 and 2002) are considered to be cheerful, popular and hardworking.

The Chinese zodiac can be used to indirectly find out how old people are, as the age of a person can be calculated through asking their zodiac sign.

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
土	earth	在、地
7	water	江、演

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

墨、







Match the words with the meanings.

chūshēngdì

- 1 出生地
- zài 2 在
- piàoliang
- 3 漂亮 Shànghǎi
- 4 上海

- a Shanghai
- **b** pretty
- c place of birth
- d at, in
- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



## **Review and practice**

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

zhè mèimei wǒ shì

- 1 这/妹妹/我/是/。
- plàoliang yě hěn tā hěn gāo 2 漂亮 /也/很/她/很/高/!
  - 绿党 / 也 / 根 / 処 / 根 / 尚 /
- yùndòngyuán shì tā lánqiú 3 运动员 /是/她/篮球/。
- shí bā suì tā
- 4 十八/岁/她/。
- Put the sentences in Activity 1 in the correct order to make a coherent passage.
- Make as many sentences as you can using 真 and 很 and the words in the box.

māma	niánqīng		oliang
妈妈	年轻		東亮
dàjiā	nǐmen	gāo	shuài
大家	你们	高	Jip
Wáng xiǎoji		ngxīng	xìnggǎn
王 小如		月星	性感
gāoxìng 高兴	jiějie 姐姐		

# Vocabulary extension

1 Look at the expressions used to describe people.



tóufa cháng 头发 长



tóufa duǎn 头发 短



gèzi gāo 个子 高

gèzi ǎi 个子矮

2 Describe the people using the appropriate expressions.



	Tā	de	hěn	
1	她(	的	)很	

Tā hěn 2 他很\_\_\_\_

TE 1k \_\_\_\_\_o

Tā de zhēn 他(的\_\_\_\_\_)真 \_\_\_\_\_

# **Vocabulary list**

谁	shéi	nron	who
	21191	pron.	WIIO
上海	Shànghǎi	n.	Shanghai
现在	xiànzài	n.	now
多大	duō dà		how old
岁	suì	n.	year(s) old
知道	zhīdào	V.	know
真	zhēn	adv.	really, so
高	gāo	adj.	tall
帅	shuài	adj.	handsome
酷	kù	adj.	cool
最	zuì	adv.	most
喜欢	xĭhuan	V.	like
籃球	lánqiú	n.	basketball
运动员	yùndòngyuán	n.	athlete
姓名	xìngmíng	n.	full name
年龄	niánlíng	n.	age

出生地	chūshēngdì	n.	place of birth
国籍	guójí	n.	nationality
电子邮箱	diànzĭ yóuxiāng	n.	email box/address
动物	dòngwù	n.	animal
熊猫	xióngmāo	n.	panda
可爱	kě'ài	adj.	cute
演员	yănyuán	n.	actor, actress
老	lăo	adj.	old
年轻	niánqīng	adj.	young
漂亮	piàoliang	adj.	pretty
矮	ăi	adj.	short (height)
头发	tóufa	n.	hair
长	cháng	adj.	long
短	duăn	adj.	short (length)
个子	gèzi	n.	(person) height

# Review 1

# **Vocabulary**

■ Match the pictures with the words.













1	yīshēng 医生	4	Zŀ
2	xuéxiào 学校	5	dà
3	xuésheng 学生	6	jì

4	Zhōngwén 中文	
5	dòngwù 动物	
6	jìzhě 记者	

## 2 Write ten words with the characters in the box.

shén	xué	dàn	gōng
什	学	但	工
shēng	me	zhù	shí
生	么	住	识
nă	kě	rèn	piàn
哪	可	认	片
zài	zuò	shì	里
在	作	是	
yī	zhào	yuàn	ài
医	照	院	爱

## Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

		nǐ hǎo 你好	jiào □↓	mingxīng 明星	rén 人
		jiějie 姐姐	piàoliang 漂亮	duō dà 多大	
t	A:	Tā shì 他是	nă guó 哪国	?	
	B:		Měiguór <del>é</del> n 美国人。		
2	A:		_!		
		Qǐngwèr 请问			nme míngzi 么 名字?
	B:		Wáng Yù 王 玉。		
3	A:	Tā shì 她是		ma — 吗?	
		Tā zhēr 她 真		_0	
	В:		ā shì wǒ mā 也是我妈		
1	A:		hi Lǐ Xiǎoló 只李 小力		
		Tă shì 他是		D	
	B:		hi tā tā 只他,他		0
5	A:	你是	xuésheng mo 学生 吗	? 你	
	B:		wuésheng we 学生,我		

## Grammar

Match the questions with the answers.

Wáng Yù de gēge zài năli gōngzuò 1 王 玉的哥哥在哪里工作? Tā duō dà

- 2 她 多大? Nǐ xìng Lǐ ma
- 3 你 姓 李吗? Tā shì shéi
- 4他是谁? Ānnà zhù zài năli
- 5 安娜 住 在 哪里? Mǎkè shi xuésheng Mǎkè de mèimèi ne
- 6马克是 学生, 马克的 妹妹 呢?

Tā mèimèi shì jìzhě

- a 他 妹妹 是记者。 Wǒ bù xìng Lǐ wǒ xìng Wáng
- b我不姓李,我姓王。
- b 我 小 姓 学,我 姓 土。 Tā zài xuéxiào gōngzuò
- c 他 在 学校 工作。 Tā shì Yáo Míng
- d他是姚明。 Tā wǔ suì
- e 她五岁。 Tā zhù zài Měiquó
- f她住在美国。
- 2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

	yě	dōu	něli	zhēn	nă	hěn
	也	都	哪里	真	哪	很
2 3 4 5	Mǎkè 马克 Ānnà 安de tā shì	shì 是 mèimei 妹妹 yīshēng 医生,	rén 人? piàoliang 漂亮。 ni tā bàba	lánqīng 年轻。 i heng 生。	shì	yīshēng 医生。

- 图 Write questions for the answers using 谁, 吗, 哪里 and 你呢 where appropriate.
  - Wǒ yè zhù zài Lúndūn 1 我也住在伦敦。
    - M C H H 104X

Tā shì wǒ jîějie

- 2 她是我姐姐。
- Tā zhù zài Běijîng
- 3 他住在北京。

Wǒ zhù zài Mò'ĕrběn dànshì wǒ bù shì Àodàlìyàrén

- 4 我住在墨尔本,但是我不是澳大利亚人。
- 4 Complete the passage with the words in the box.
  You can use some words more than once.

zhù zài	shì	dōu	xìng
住在	是	都	姓
yǎnyuán	yě	hěn	suì
演员	也	很	岁

		Wáng bù 王,不	Yù 玉。
tā 她	Zhōngguórén 中国人,		
èrshí	rā 。她		
	yīyuàn gōngzuà 医院 工作,		zài _ 在
	īngzuò tāmen 工作,他们		
	zuì xǐhuan de yù 最喜欢的		
tā 他	gāo yě h 高,也?		
de 的	shì Lǐ Xiǎo 是李小		

# **Integrated skills**



### 1 Listen and circle the words you hear.

Tā shì shéi

A:他是谁?

Tā shì wǒ gēge dìdi

B: 他是我 (哥哥/弟弟)。

Tā duō dà

A:他多大?

Tā sānshí suì èrshí suì

B:他(三十岁/二十岁)。

Tā zhù zài năli

A: 他住在哪里?

Tā zhù zài Àodàlìyà Jiānádà

B: 他 住 在 (澳大利亚 / 加拿大)。

Tā zuò shénme gōngzuò

A: 他做什么 工作?

Tā shì xuésheng yīshēng

B: 他是(学生/医生)。

### Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Shǐdìfū shì Yīngguórén ma

1史蒂夫是 英国人 吗?

Shì dànshì tā zhù zài Běijīng

a是, 但是他住在北京。

Bù tā bù zhù zài Lúndūn b 不,他不住在伦敦。

Nĭ zài yīyuàn gōngzuò ma

2你在医院工作吗?

Shì wǒ shì yīshēng

a 是, 我是 医生。

Bù wǒ bù shì xuésheng

b不, 我不是 学生。

Nǐ zuì xǐhuan de míngxīng shì shéi

3你最喜欢的明星 是谁?

Lĭ Xiaolóng

a李 小龙。

Wǒ bù shì míngxĩng

b我不是 明星。

### **Work in pairs. Complete the conversations.**



Nǐ hǎo
1 A:你好! \_\_\_\_\_?
Wǒ jiào
B: 我叫\_\_\_\_。\_\_\_\_?

A: \_\_\_\_\_。
Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng
B: 认识你很 高兴。



Zhè shì wò māma zhè shì wò bàba 2 A: 这是我妈妈, 这是我爸爸。

B:		?
A:	tā shì wǒ jiệ 她是我姐	
B:		?
A:	Tā shì hùshi 她是护士。	>
B:		?

A: . . . .

### 4 Complete the Sina profile with your own information.



Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other's profiles.

Měiquó

\*园

xĭhuan

古水

### 5 Complete the passage with the words in the box.

yùndòngyuán 라쿠라를

Zhōngguó

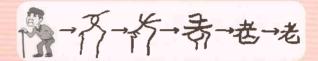
तोज्ञ

	T	<u> </u>	医40万	大凹	音外	
	gāo 高		māma 妈妈	xuésheng 学生		
		shì wǒ zuì ; 是我最	喜欢 的	篮球_	tā ,他	
hěn	1	Tā :	shì	rén de	anshi tā xià	nzàl
很					旦是他 现	
zhù	zài					
住	在_	o				
	Τā	d	ōu zhù zài	Zhōngguó	tā jiějie	
		yě zhù zài 也住在		。他姐姐	1是护士	
zài		göngzud	tā d	ìdi shì	yě	
					,也	
shì	lángiú	yùndòngyi	ıán tām	en dōu	lángiú	
					篮球	0
Τā	shì Yá	o Ming				
		k 明!				

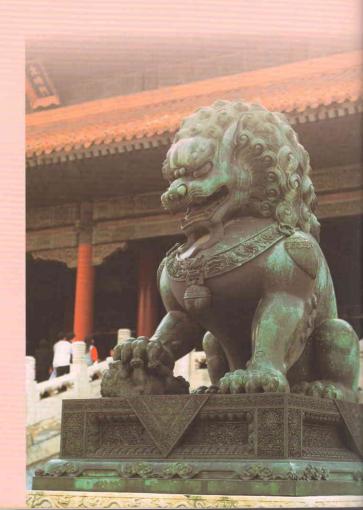
## **Enjoy Chinese**



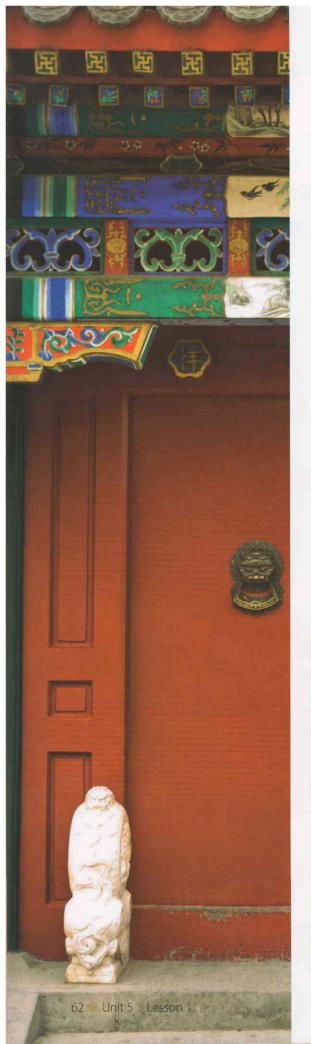
lǎo 老 old lǎorén 老人 old man lǎoshī 老师 teacher lǎobǎn 老板 boss



The original meaning of 老 is "old". Its ancient shape looks like an old man walking with a crutch.







# Vocabulary and listening



Match the pictures with the words.











dlànhuà 1 电话

shǒuiī 2 手机

hàomă 3 号码

göngyuán 4 公园

Now listen and say the words.



2 Write the telephone numbers you hear.

2

Now listen again and check your answers.



El Listen to the conversation.

Yeong-min is asking Steve for his address and phone number.

Yŏngmin

nǐ de diànhuà hàomă shì

史蒂夫, 你的电话号码是55546998吗? 永民: Shì zhè shì wǒ jiā de diànhuà hàomà

Shĭdìfū 史蒂夫:

是,这是我家的电话号码。

Yŏngmín 永民: Nǐ de shǒujī hàomǎ shì duōshao 你的手机号码是多少?

Wǒ de shǒujī hàomā shì Shĭdìfū

我的手机号码是 12081345761。 史蒂夫:

Yŏngmín Nǐ zhù zài năli

你住在哪里? 永民:

Wǒ zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào 史蒂夫: 我住在公园路19号。

Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme Yŏnamin 永民: 你的电子邮箱 是什么?

Shǐdìfū

史蒂夫: steve@DC.com。

### 生词 New words

diànhuà göngyuán telephone 电话 park 公园 hàomă lù 号码 number, code 路 road shŏujī hào number, date 手机 mobile phone 목 (spoken) duōshao what, how 多少 many/much



## 4 Listen again and answer the questions.

Shǐdìfū jiā de diànhuà hàomà shì duōshao 中華未家的 由话 县码县 名小?

- 1 史蒂夫家的 电话 号码是 多少? Shǐdìfū zhù zài nǎli
- 2 史蒂夫 住 在 哪里? Shǐdìfū de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
- 3 史蒂夫的电子 邮箱 是 什么?



## Listen and check the numbers you hear.

Yǒngmín zhù zài Dàxué Lù hào 1 永民 住在大学路 \_\_\_\_\_\_号。

a 313

□ b 213

Tā jiā de diànhuà hàomă shì 2 他家的电话 号码是

a 55592134

**b** 55591234

Tā de shǒujī hàomá shì

3 他的手机号码是\_\_\_

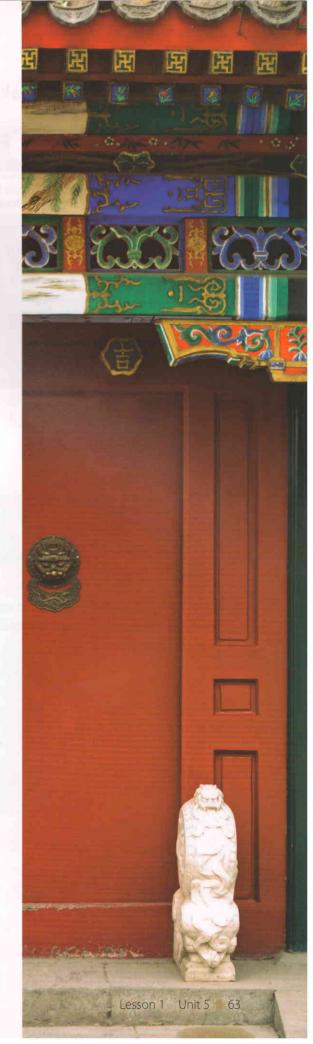
a 12901052227

■ b 12910055227

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3 using your own addresses and phone numbers.







# **Pronunciation and speaking**

## The tones of



■ Look at the tone marks for 不. How does the tone of 不 change?

bù gāoxìng 不 高兴 bù niánqīng 不 年轻 bù hǎo bú shì 不 好

Now listen and say the words.

Listen and write the correct tones for 不.

bu kě'ài bu gāo
1 不可爱 5 不高
bu shuài bu kù
2 不 帅 6 不酷
bu xìng bu piàoliang
3 不 姓 7 不 漂亮
bu jiào bu rènshi



El Read the sentences aloud. Make sure you change the tone of  $\overline{\Lambda}$  when necessary.

8 不 认识

Wǒ bú xìng Wáng

- 1我不姓王。
  - Wŏ bù zhīdào

4 不叫

2 我不知道。

Tā bù xǐhuan Yáo Míng

3 他不喜欢姚明。

Zhè bú shì wǒ de yóuxiāng

- 4 这不是我的邮箱。
- Tā bù niánqīng 5 她不 年轻。

Now listen and repeat.



Listen and say the words.

diànhuà shŏuiī hàomà 号码 1 由话 手机. zhè shì duōshao shénme 多少 2 这是 什么 nĭ de diànzĭ yóuxiāna 电子 3 你的 邮箱

Work in groups. Ask and answer questions about phone numbers and email addresses. Use the prompts below to help you.

Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao 你的电话号码是多少? Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme 你的电子邮箱是什么?



# CHINESE TO GO

Receiving and ending phone calls

Wèi 喂。 Hello! Nǐ zhǎo shéi ya 你找谁呀? Who do you want to speak to? Dǎ cuò le 打错了。 Wrong number. Duìbuqǐ 对不起。 Sorry.

## Reading and writing

11 Look at the mobile phone screen and guess the meaning of the words.



Read the messages between Mark and Wang Yu and answer the questions.

Măkè de xīn dìzhǐ shì shénme

1 马克的新地址是什么?

Măkẻ de xīn diànhuà hàomă shì duōshao

2 马克的新 电话 号码是 多少?

Wáng Yù de shǒujī hàomă shì duōshao

3 王 玉的手机号码是 多少?

Ānnà zhù zài năll

4 安娜 住 在 哪里?

xīn duănxin ◆ 新短信 Zhè shì wǒ de xīn dìzhǐ hé xīn 这是我 的 新地址和 新 diànhuà hàomá Dàxué Lù èrshisān 电话号码:大学路 23 hào Dàxuésheng Göngyù wülingliù 号 大学生 公寓 hào fángjiān nĭ kěyĭ gĕi wŏ 号房间:你可以给我 dă diànhuà 打电话。 fájlánrén Măkè 发件人: 马克 16628958763 xuănxiàng tuìchū 选项 退出

Read the text message and write a reply.



Nǐ de dìzhǐ hé diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì 你好! 你的地址 和电子 邮箱 是 shénme Nǐ jiā de diànhuà hàomă shì duōshao 什么? 你家的 电话 号码是 多少? făiiànrén Shĭdìfū

发件人: 史蒂夫 12081345761

Ní hào Wǒ de dìzhǐ shì 你好!我的地址是……



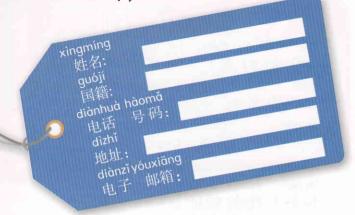


生词 New words xīn 新 new dìzhĭ address 地址 dàxué university 大学 block of flats, qōngyù apartment 公寓 building fángjiān 房间 room kěyĭ 可以 may, can qěi 给 give, to dă diànhuà make a 打 电话 phone call fājlànrén 发件人 sender shōudào receive 收到 xièxie 谢谢 thank you

### Work in pairs.

Student A: You have lost your suitcase. Ask Student B at the Lost Luggage Office to help you find it.

Student B: You work at the Lost Luggage Office. Make notes about Student A's lost suitcase. Use the prompts below to help you.



Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi

你叫什么名字?

Nǐ shì năli rén

你是哪里人?

Nǐ de diànhuà hàomă shì duōshao

你的电话号码是多少?

Nǐ de dìzhǐ shì shénme

你的地址是什么?

Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme

你 的 电子 邮箱 是 什么?

## Language in use

**Ouestion** word



### Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Tā de shǒujī hàomà shìduōshao

1 他 的 手机 号码 是 多少?

Tā de shǒujī hàomă shì

a 他的手机号码是13323455928。

Tā zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù èrshíyī hào

b 他 住 在 公园 路 21 号。

Măkè de fángjiānhào shì duōshao

2 马克的 房间号 是 多少?

Măkè bù zhù zòi wŭlingbā

a 马克 不 住 在 508 。

Măkè de fángjiānhào shì wǔlíngliù

b 马克 的 房间号 是 506 。

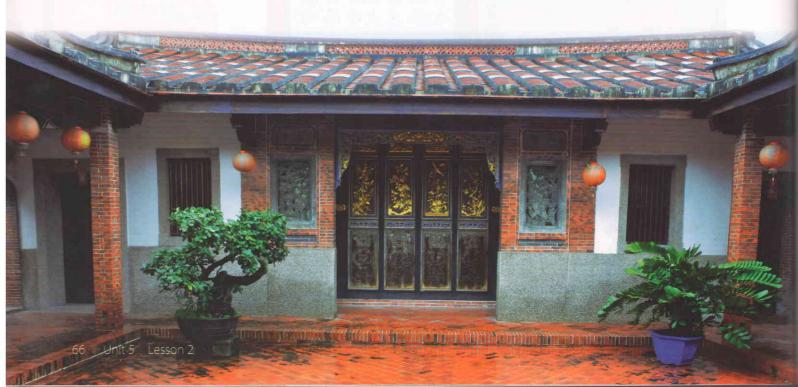
Shǐdìfū zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù duōshao hào

3 史蒂夫住在 公园 路 多少 号?

Shíjiŭ hào

Dàxué Lù

a 19 号。 b 大学路。



2 Look at the pictures and write a question using 多少 for each and an appropriate answer.



**A:** \_\_\_\_\_?

B:



**A:** \_\_\_\_\_?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

# Word order of Chinese addresses

Look at the phrases.

Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào 公园 路 19 号

Dàxué Lù Dàxuéshēng Gōngyù wǔlíngliù hào fángjiān 大学路 大学生 公寓 506 号 房间

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 The word order of Chinese addresses goes from big to small.
- 2 The word order of Chinese addresses goes from small to big.

- Write the addresses in Chinese.
  - 1 No. 8 University Road
  - 2 Room 203, Yu Building, No. 20 Park Road
- Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

The pronunciation of the number "1"

- Listen to the phrases.
  - yī èr sān sì 1 — 二 三 四 yī tiān
  - 2 一天
  - 3 55531213
    yāo' èrbā hào fángjiān
  - 4 128 号房间

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 The number "1" is pronounced *yi* in ordinary counting.
- The number "1" is pronounced yao in ordinary counting.
- The number "1" is pronounced yao in telephone and room numbers.
- Read the sentences aloud.

Suì

1 21 岁

Fángjiān hào shì

2 房间 号是1280。

Diànhuà hàomă shì

- 3 电话 号码是3181。
  - gè fángjiān
- 4 11 个 房间

Now listen and repeat.

Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

# **Communication activity**

Work in pairs.

#### Student A:

Your school is in the process of updating its student records. You are asked to provide the following information to the school office:

- Your emergency contact number. The number should include the country code and area code.

  xuéshêng kă
- Your student card number (学生 卡 hàomà 号码).

#### Student B:

You work in the school office and are in the process of updating the student records. You are asked to do the following:

- Write down the student's emergency contact number.

  xuéshēng kă
- Record the student card number (学生 卡hàomà 号码).
- Work in pairs. Act out the conversation using the information you prepared in Activity 1.
- El Change roles and act out the conversation again.

# Turn to pages 152 and 158 for more speaking practice.

## **Cultural Corner**

# The Chinese way of thinking: from large to small

What is the date today? The answer in Chinese could be 2009年9月19号 (19 September 2009). Chinese people tend to organize their thoughts from large to small, from general to specific, or from collective to individual. You can find this phenomenon in various aspects of Chinese tradition. In the common Chinese address format, for example, 中国北京市海淀区北京外国语大 学9号楼504房间, the sequence goes from larger areas to smaller ones. This contrasts with Western formats which are usually from smaller to larger areas. for example, Room 504, No. 9 Building, Beijing Foreign Studies University, Haidian District, Beijing, China.

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples		
i	speech	认识、话		
· ì_	walk	这、退		

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

记	送	谁	过
-			

2 Match the words with the meanings.

	fāsòng		
1	发送	а	excuse me
	tuìchū		
2	退出	b	thanks
	xièxie		
3	谢谢	c	send
	qǐngwèn		
4	请问	d	exit

Trace the characters in the boxes.



## **Review and practice**



- 1 Listen and check the numbers you hear.
  - 1 □ a 88346693
- □ b 88384639
- 2 a 12942355734
- **b** 12943257534
- Match the questions with the answers.

Nǐ jiā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao 1 你家的 电话 号码是 多少? Nǐ de fángjiānhào shì duōshao

2 你的 房间号 是 多少?
Wǒ de shǒujî hàomǎ shì
nǐ de ne
3 我的手机 号码 是 17978332624、你的呢?

Zhè shì nǐ de diànhuà hàomò ma

4 这是你的电话 号码吗? Nǐ zhù zài wǔlíngbā hào fángjiān ma

5 你住在 508 号 房间 吗?

Bù zhè bù shì wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ a 不,这不是我的电话号码。

b 010-23897768<sub>o</sub>

Shì

- c 是。 Yāoyāosān
- d 113<sub>o</sub>

Wǒ de shǒujī hàomà shì

e 我的手机号码是19810787643。

图 Write questions with 多少 for the answers.

sänlingbäqi hào fángjiān

- 1 3087 号房间。 Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào
- 2 公园路 19号。
- 3 72298111

# Vocabulary extension

II Read the words in the box.



Look at the envelope.



Now add your address as the sender.

# **Vocabulary list**

电话	diànhuà	n.	telephone	给	gěi	v./prep.	give, to
号码	hàomă	n.	number, code	打电话	dă diànhuà		make a phone call
手机	shŏujī	n.	mobile phone	发件人	fājiànrén	n.	sender
多少	duōshao	pron.	what, how many/much	收到	shōudào	V.	receive
公园	gōngyuán	n.	park	谢谢	xièxie	V.	thank you
路	lù	n.	road	收件箱	shōujiànxiāng	n.	inbox
号	hào	n.	number, date (spoken)	发送	fāsòng	V.	send
新	xīn	adj.	new	短信	duănxìn	n.	message
地址	dìzhĭ	n.	address	退出	tuìchū	V.	exit, go back
大学	dàxué	n.	university	省	shěng	n.	province
公寓	gōngyù	n.	block of flats, apartment	市	shì	n.	city
房间	fángjiān	n.	building room	区	qū	n.	district
可以	kěyĭ	V.	may, can	街	jiē	n.	street



# **Vocabulary and listening**

1-55	11 Number the m	onths in the order	you hear them.
	Wǔyuè	Qīyuè	Yīyuè
	□ a 五月	□ ¢ 七月	□ e 一月
	Liùyuè	Jiǔyuè	Èryuè
	□ b 六月	□ d 九月	<b>口 f</b> 二月

Now listen again and say the months.

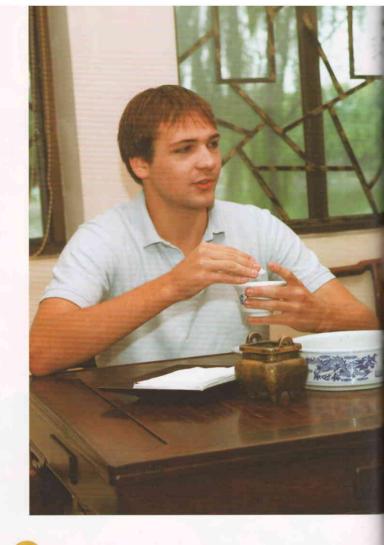
1-56	Number the dates in the	order you hear them.
	Èryuè jiǔ hào □ a二月九号	Èryuè wǔ hào □ ¢二月 五号
	Qīyuè shíqī hào □ b七月十七号	Liùyuè sān hào □ d 六月 三 号

Now listen again and say the dates.





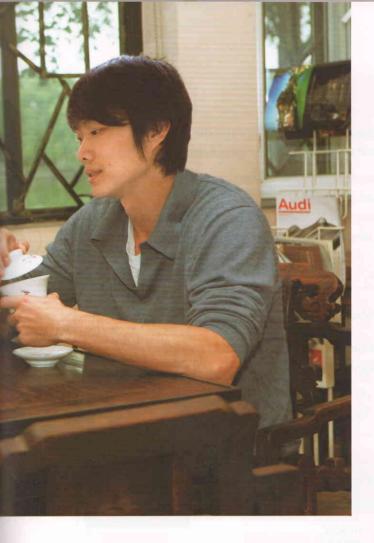
Now match them with the days in English.



4 Listen to the conversation.

Mark and Yeong-min are talking about birthdays.

Yŏngmín Èryuè jiǔ hào shì Măkè 马克: 永民, 二月九号是 Wáng Yù de shēngrì 王玉的生日。 Zhēn de ma Jīntiān jǐ hào Yŏngmín 永民: 真的吗? 今天几号? Măkè Jintiān Èryuè wǔ hào 马克: 今天二月五号。 Yŏngmín Jiǔ hào xīngqī jǐ 永民: 九号星期几? Xīngqītiān Women qĭng tā 马克: 星期天。我们请她 chīfàn zěnmeyàng 吃饭,怎么样?



## 生词 New words

Éryuè 二月	February	chī 吃	eat
yuè 月	month	qù 去	go
shēngrì 生日	birthday	chúfáng 厨房	kitchen
zhēn de 真的	really	zěnmeyàng 怎么样	how about
jīntiān 今天	today	nàli 那里	there
jǐ 几	how many	Zhōngcān 中餐	Chinese food
Xīngqītiān 星期天	Sunday	cān 餐	cuisine, meal
xīngqī 星期	week	hǎochī 好吃	tasty
	week		tasty no problem

Hảo qù năli Yŏngmín 永民: 好, 去哪里?

Măkè Qù Māma Chúfáng 马克:去"妈妈厨房"

zěnmeyàng Nàli de Zhōngcān 怎么样?那里的 中餐

hěn hǎochī 很好吃。

Hặc méi wèntí Yöngmin 永民:好,没问题。



Listen again and answer the questions.

Wáng Yù de shēngrì shì ji hào 1 王玉的生日 是几号?

Wáng Yù de shēngrì shì xǐngqī jǐ 2 王玉的生日是星期几?

Jīntiān jǐ hào Xīngqī jī 3 今天 几号? 星期 几?

Tāmen qù năli chī Zhōngcān

4 他们去哪里吃 中餐?

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 4 using your friends' birthdays.

# **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### The initials: j, q, x



## Listen and say the words.

fángjiān iiějie iintiān 1 姐姐 今天 房间 niángīng lánaiú. qĭnqwèn 2 请问 年轻 篮球 xuésheng pníxopp mingxing 3 高兴 明星 学生



## Listen and check the correct pinyin.

Běijing

Běixīng



## **Say the sentences aloud.**

Běigīng

Wǒ xìng Qí jiào Qí Jīn 1 我姓齐, 叫齐金。

Jīntiān shì Qīyuè jiù hào Xīngqīyī

- 2 今天 是七月九 号,星期一。 Wǒ xiǎng qǐng jiējie chī xīcān
- 3 我 想 请 姐姐吃西餐。

Now listen and repeat.

#### 九月 Xingqiri Xingqiyi Xingqi'èr Xingqisan Xingqisi Xingqiwa Xingqilia 星期日 星期一 星期二 星期三 星期四 星期五 星期六 10 11 12 13 15 17 14 16 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 28 25 26 27 29 30

4 Work in pairs. Use the calendar at the bottom of the left column to say the dates and days.

Student A: Choose five dates from the calendar and say them aloud.

**Student B:** Listen to the five dates and say the corresponding days.

Jiǔyuè bā hào Xīngqīsì A: 九月八号 B: 星期四

Now change roles.

5 Work in pairs. Ask about the birthdays of each other's family members or friends.

Nǐ bàba de shēngrì shì jǐ yuè jǐ hào 你爸爸的生日是几月几号?



#### CHINESE TO GO



Making and accepting invitations

Jīntiān shì wǒ de shēngrì 今天是我的生日。Today is my birthday. Shēngrì kuàilè

生日 快乐!

Happy birthday!

Wǎnshang wǒ qǐng nǐ chī Zhōngcān zěnmeyàng 晚上 我请你吃中餐,怎么样? How about l invite you for a Chinese meal this evening?

Tài hão le Xièxie ni

太好了! 谢谢你。That's great! Thank you.

Bù kèqi

不 客气。 You're welcome.

# **Reading and writing**

1 Match the pictures with the words.



shàngbān 上班



jiànmiàn 见面



pàiduì 3 派对



kàn shū 4 看书



Read Anna's weekly planner and answer the questions.

Annà Xīngqījǐ shàngbān 1 安娜 星期几 上班?

Ānnà Xîngqiji gēn Măkè qù

2 安娜 星期几 跟 马克 去 chī Zhōngcān 吃 中餐?

Ānnà Xîngqîjî gên lăoshī

3 安娜 星期几 跟 老师 jiànmiàn 见面?

Shĭdìfū Xīngqījĭ shēngrì

4 史蒂夫 星期几 生日?

## 生词 New words

Liù yuè		dă	play (ball game
六月	June	打	with hands)
rì		gën	With Hariosy
日	date (written)	跟	with
Xīngqīrì		jiànmiàn	
星期日	Sunday	见面	meet up
Xīngqīyī		kàn	
星期一	Monday	看	read, see
Xîngqî'èr		shū	
星期二	Tuesday	书	book
Xīngqīsān		shàngbān	
星期三	Wednesday	上班	go to work
Xīngqīsì		xué	
星期四	Thursday	学	study, learn
Xīngqīwŭ		pàiduì	
星期五	Friday	派对	party
Xīngqīliù			
星期六	Saturday		

		u u u					
	sān rì j  三日一 z						
	Xīngqīrì 星期日	Xingqiyi 星期一	Xingqi'èr 星期二	Xingqisān 星期三	Xingqisì 星期四	Xingqiwii 星期五	Xingqiliù 星期六
9:00   12:00	dǎ lángiú 打篮球	kàn shū 看书		qù yīyuàn 去 医院	gēn lǎoshī 跟老师 jiànmiàn 见面		gēn Mǎkè 跟马克 jiànmiàn 见面
12:00   3:00			xué 学 Zhōngwén 中文			xué 学 Zhōngwén 中文	
3:00         		shàngbān 上班		kàn shū 看书	shàngbān 上班		qù Wáng Yù 去王 jiō de xīn jiō 的新家
6:00   9:00	gēn Wáng Yù 跟王玉 de gēge 的哥哥 jiànmiàn		gēn Mǎkè 跟马克 qù chī 去吃 Zhōngcān 中餐			Shǐdìfū 史蒂夫 de shēngrì 的生日 pàiduì 派对	R



Write your own weekly planner. Use the words below to help you.

zuò qǐng chī kàn qù xué dǎ 做、请、吃、看、去、学、打

# 

Xingqiri 星期日	Xingqiyi 星期一	Xīngqī'èr 星期二	Xīngqīsān 星期三	Xingqisi 星期四	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Xingqillù 星期六

Now work in pairs. Ask and say what you are going to do and when.

Nǐ Xīngqīyī zuò shénme A: 你 星期一 做 什么?

Wǒ Xīngqīyī qù yīyuàn B: 我星期一去医院。

# Language in use

Months and dates

Look at the months and dates.

Mont	h		D	ay		
Number	月	Number	+	Number	号	
у <u>ї</u> —	yuè 月			九	hào 号	9 January
èr — wǔ	yuè		shí 十	sì 四	hào 号	14 February
五	yuè	èr —	shí +	sān 三	hào 号	23 May
liù 六	yuè 月	sān <u>=</u>	shí 十		hào 号	30 June

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Chinese months and dates are all different, sharing no common characters.
- Chinese months are formed by adding the character for "month" after the characters for 1 to 12.
- 3 Chinese dates are formed by adding the character for "date" after the characters for 1 to 31.
- 4 In Chinese, the days come before the months.

2 Write the dates in Chinese.

1 4 March

4 1 October

2 6 April

5 7 November

3 22 August

6 31 December

Turn to page 166 for more information.



#### Sentences without verbs

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate
Jîntiān 今天	Xīngqīliù 星期六。
デ人 Today is Saturd	
Mǎkè 马克	shíjiǔ suì 十九岁。
Mark is 19 year	s old.
Wŏ 我	hěn gāoxìng 很高兴。
I'm very happy.	

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 In the sentences above, all the predicates are nouns, or noun/adjective phrases.
- 2 Chinese sentences must always have a verb.
- 3 Verbs are not necessary for sentences stating age, dates, days of the week and time, etc.

#### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

Xīngqīsì jīntiān

- 1 星期四 / 今天 /。 Shí'èryuè èrshíwǔ hào jīntiān
- 2 十二月/二十五 号/今天/。 èrshí suì Wáng Yù
- 3二十岁/王玉/。
- Turn to page 166 for grammar reference.

# Making invitations using



#### Underline the two verbs in each sentence.

Women qing tā chi Zhōngcān

- 1 我们 请 她 吃 中餐。
- Mǎkè qǐng wǒ qù tā jiā
- 2 马克 请 我 去 他家。
- Shǐdifū qǐng Ānnà qù tā de shēngrì pàlduì 3 史蒂夫 请 安娜 去 他 的 生日 派对。

Now complete the table with the appropriate parts of the sentences.

	Person making invitation		Person receiving invitation	Event/Activity
1				
2		qǐng 请		
3				

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 Linvited her to have a meal.
- Yeong-min invited us to his home.
- 3 Steve invited Wang Yu to his birthday party.
- Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

# LESSON | 3

# **Communication activity**

Work in two groups.

Group A: Find out about the dates of holidays in mainland China.

Group B: Find out about the dates of holidays in Hong Kong.

Use the following words to help you.

Yuándàn	New Year's Day	Zhōngqiūjié	Mid-Autumn
元旦		中秋节	Festival
Chūnjié	Spring	Chóngyángjié	Double Ninth
春节	Festival	重阳节	Festival
Qīngmíngjié 清明节	Tomb Sweeping Festival	Fódànrì 佛诞日	Buddha's Birthday
Láodòngjié 劳动节	Labour Day	Shèngdànjié 圣诞节	Christmas
Duānwǔjié	Dragon Boat	Fùhuójié	Easter
端午节	Festival	复活节	
Guóqìngjié 国庆节	National Day		

	Zhōngguó dàlù 中国 大陆	mainland China
	jiéri 节日 Holidays	rìqī 日期 Dates
1		
2		
3		

Xlānggǎng 香港	Hong Kong
jiérì 节日Holidays	rìqī 日期 Dates
1	
2	
3	

- Tell the other group about the dates of holidays from your research and make notes.
- Turn to pages 152 and 158 for more speaking practice.

## **Cultural Corner**

# Lucky numbers in China

In Chinese culture, certain numbers are considered lucky(吉利) or unlucky (不吉利), based on the Chinese words which the pronunciations are similar to. For example, the number 9 (九) sounds like the word "long-lasting"(久), and is therefore considered a lucky number. The number  $4(\square)$ , on the contrary is considered an unlucky number because it sounds like the word "death" (死). In Chinese culture, the use of lucky numbers can be found everywhere: monetary gifts, phone numbers, street addresses, residence floors, vehicle licence plate numbers, and so on. The number 8 is the most frequently used lucky number, as it sounds similar to a word meaning "prosperity" or "wealth"(发),

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
月	moon	月、期
扌	hand	打、握

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 朋找护服

2 Match the words with the meanings.

1	xīngqī 星期	a nurse
2	yuè 月	b make a phone call
	dǎ diànhuà 打 电话	c week
Ĭ	hùshi	
4	<b>护士</b>	d month

Trace the characters in the boxes.



## **Review and practice**

Circle the odd word out.

shēngrì	jiǔ hào	jintiān	Xīngqīrì
1 生日	九号	今天	星期日
rì	yuè	xīngqī	hàomǎ
2 日	月	星期	号码
chī	qù	kàn	jī
3 吃	去	看	几
pàiduì	yīyuàn	dàxué	jiā
4 派对	医院	大学	家

2 Match the words with the days in English.

1	Xīngqīliù 星期六	a	Thursday
2	Xīngqīrì 星期日	b	Friday
3	Xīngqī'èr 星期二	c	Sunday
	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	d	Tuesday
5	Xīngqīsì 星期四	e	Saturday

B Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

	Xingqirì 星期日	jīntiān 今天	chī 吃	qù 去	
1		/uè shí hào 月十号。			
2	Jîntiān Shíyi 今天十一			_0	
3	Lǎoshī qǐng 老师 请		tā jiā 她家。		
4	Annà qǐng 安娜 请!	Shǐdìfū hé 史蒂夫和			Zhōngcān _中餐。

4 Look at the pictures and write full sentences to describe the dates and days.







# **Vocabulary extension**

Look at the ways to say days and dates.

qùnlán	jīnnián	míngnlán
去年	今年	明年
zuótiān	jīntiān	míngtiān
昨天	今天	明天
shàngge yuè	zhège yuè	xiàge yuè
上个 月	这个月	下个月
shàngge xīngqī	zhège xīngqī	xiàge xīngqī
上个 星期	这个星期	下个星期

Now complete the sentences.

1 blodge	wǒ jiǔsuì jīnniár 我 九岁,今年 wǒ shíyī suì 我 十一 岁。	
Zuótiān Xīngq		Xīngqīrì
2 昨天 星期	六,	星期日,
	Xīngqīyī 星期一。	
Shàngge yuè	shì Liùyuè	shì Qīyuè
3 上个 月		是七月,
	shì Bāyuè	
	是八月。	

# **Vocabulary list**

二月	Èryuè	n.	February	星期三	Xîngqîsan	n.	Wednesday
月	yuè	n.	month	星期四	Xīngqīsì	n.	Thursday
生日	shēngrì	n.	birthday	星期五	Xīngqīwǔ	n.	Friday
真的	zhēn de		really	星期六	Xîngqîllù	n.	Saturday
今天	jīntiān	п.	today	打	dă	V.	play (ball game with hands)
几	jĭ	pron.	how many	跟	gën	prep.	with
星期天	Xīngqītiān	n.	Sunday (spoken)	见面	jlànmiàn	V.	meet up
星期	xingqi	n.	week	看	kàn	V.	read, see
我们	wŏmen	pron.	we, us	书	shū	n.	book
吃饭	chīfàn	v.	have a meal	上班	shàngbān	V.	go to work
吃	chī	V.	eat	学	xué	V.	study, learn
去	qù	v.	go	派对	pàiduì	n.	party
厨房	chúfáng	n.	kitchen	一月	Yīyuè	n.	January
怎么样	zěnmeyàng	pron.	how about	五月	Wŭyuè	n.	May
那里	nàli	pron.	there	七月	<b>Qīyuè</b>	n.	July
中餐	Zhōngcān	n.	Chinese food	九月	Jiǔyuè	n.	September
餐	cān	n.	cuisine, meal	去年	qùnián	n.	last year
好吃	hẳochī	adj.	tasty	今年	jīnnián	n.	this year
没问题	méi wèntí		no problem	明年	míngnián	n.	next year
六月	Liùyuè	п.	June	昨天	zuótiān	n.	yesterday
日	rì	n.	date (written)	明天	mingtiān	n.	tomorrow
星期日	Xîngqîrì	n.	Sunday (written)	上个	shàngge		last
星期一	Xīngqīyī	n.	Monday	这个	zhège	pron.	this
星期二	Xīngqī'èr	n.	Tuesday	下个	xiàge		next



# Vocabulary and listening

Match the watches with the times.









bā diǎn sì diǎn shíyī diǎn 1八点 2四点 3十一点 4六点

Now listen and say the times.

2 Number the times in the order you hear them.





shí diặn bàn

qī diǎn shíwǔ fēn □a十点 半 □b七点 十五分

săn diăn yī kè shí' èr diăn sìshíwǔ fēn □c三 点 一刻 □d十二 点 四十五分

Write the times in numbers or characters.





jiǔ diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn qī diǎn wǔshíjiǔ fên a九 点 二十五 分 b七 点 五十九分







4 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Wang Yu are making plans for the weekend.

Shǐdìfū Wáng Yù zhège zhōumò nǐ yǒu 史蒂夫: 王玉。这个周末你有

> shí jiān ma 时间吗?

Wáng Yù Xīnggītiān wǒ yào qù kàn yéye 王玉:星期天我要去看爷爷。

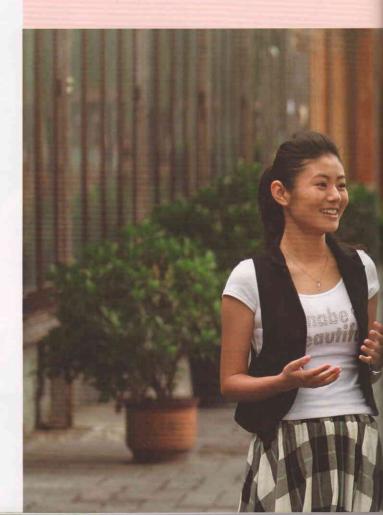
shǐdìfū xīngqīllù nǐ yǒu shénme jìhuà 史蒂夫: 星期六 你有什么计划?

Wáng Yù Méiyŏu 王玉: 没有。

Shǐdìfū Women yīqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng 史蒂夫: 我们一起去看 电影,

> hặc mạ 好吗?

Wáng Yù Kàn shénme diànyǐng 王玉: 看什么 电影?



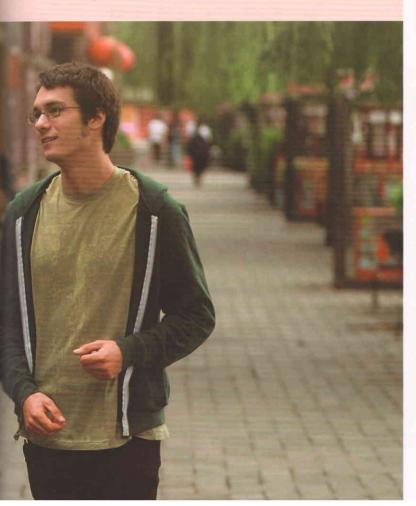
shǐdìfū Zhōngguó diànyǐng Diànyǐng de míngzi 史蒂夫:中国 电影。电影 的 名字 jiào Jiā 叫《家》。

Wáng Yù Hảo Jĩ diản 王玉:好。几点?

Shǐdìfū Diànyǐng bā diǎn bàn kāishǐ wǒmen 史蒂夫: 电影八点半开始,我们 bā diǎn zài diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu jiàn 八点在电影院门口见, zěnmeyàng 怎么样?

Wáng Yù Tài hảo le Wǒ qǐng wǒ de péngyou 王玉:太好了。我请我的朋友 yīqǐ qù kěyǐ ma 一起去,可以吗?

Shǐdifū Méi wèntí Mingtiān wǎnshang bā diǎn jiàn 史蒂夫: 没问题。明天 晚上 八点见!



## 生词 New words

zhège		diăn	
这个	this	点	o'clock
zhōumò		bàn	
周末	weekend	半	half (an hour)
yŏu		kāishĭ	
有	have	开始	start
shíjiān		diànyingyuàn	
时间	time		cinema
yào		ménkőu	entrance,
要	want	门口	doorway
yéye	de-al	jiàn 19	
爷爷	grandfather	见	see, meet
jìhuà 计划	mlan.	tài 太	
	plan		very, too
méiyǒu 没有	not have	le 了	particle
Vīgǐ	HOUHAVE	péngyou	parude
一起	together	朋友	friend
diànyǐng	togotine.	mingtion	
电影	movie, film	明天	tomorrow
jĭ diǎn		wånshang	
	what time	晚上	evening
		and postingers	



**5** Listen again and answer the questions.

Wáng Yù Xīngqīllù zuò shénme

1 王 玉星期六 做 什么?

Wáng Yù nă tiān qù kàn yéye

2 王玉哪天去看爷爷?

Shǐdìfū hé Wáng Yù kàn shénme diànyǐng

3 史蒂夫和 王 玉 看 什么 电影?

Shǐdìfū hé Wáng Yù zài năli jiànmiàn

4 史蒂夫和 王 玉在哪里 见面?

Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 4 using the days and times below.

 Xīngqīyī
 Xīngqīsì

 星期一 10:15
 星期四 8:15

 Xīngqīsān
 Xīngqīwǔ

 星期三 8:30
 星期五 9:30

# **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### Difference between "u" and "ü"



	u	ü
1 去	a 🗌	b 🔲
<b>2</b> 女	a 🔲	b 🔲
3 不	a 🗌	b 🗌
4 住	a 🔲	b 🗌
5 语	a 🗌	b 🔲
6 #3	a 🔲	b 🗌

Now listen again and mark the tones for the words.

# Z Read the sentences aloud.

Wǒ gēn Wáng Yù xué Yīngyǔ 1 我跟王玉学英语。 Yú lǎoshī qù túshūguǎn jiè shū 2 于老师去图书馆借书。

## Now listen and repeat.

# El Listen and say the words.

jǐ diǎn	jīntiān	míngtiān
1 几点	今天	明天
yīqǐ	kěyǐ	zěnmeyàng
2 一起	可以	怎么样
diànyǐng	péngyou	ménkŏu
3 电影	朋友	Ĵ ☐ ☐

# CHINESE TO GO Confirming appointments Mingtiān wǎnshang bā diǎn jiàn 明天 晚上 八点见! See you at eight tomorrow evening. Yīyán-wéiding 一言为定。 That's settled. Bùjiàn-bùsàn 不见不散! Be there or be square!

## Work in pairs. Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.

VIACI WINDE & CONTROL
Méi wèntí zài nǎli jiàn □ a 没问题,在哪里见?
Duìbuqǐ jīntiān wǎnshang wǒ yào gōngzuð □ b 对不起,今天 晚上 我要 工作
Míngtiān jiàn □ c 明天 见!
Kěyǐ Jǐ diǎn □ d 可以! 几 点?
Jīntiān wǎnshang wǒmen yīqǐ qù kàn □ e 今天 晚上 我们 一起 去 看
diànyǐng zěnmeyàng 电影,怎么样?
Mingtiān wănshang ne □ f 明天 晚上 呢?
Diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu □ g 电影院 门口。
Bā diǎn zěnmeyàng 口 h 八 点 怎么样?
Hǎo Míngtiān wǎnshang bā diǎn jiàn 口i好!明天 晚上 八点见!

Now act out the conversation.

## 5 Work in pairs. Make plans to see a movie.



Student A: Invite Student B to the cinema.

Student B: Say you are busy. Suggest another day and time.

**Student A:** Agree to Student B's suggestions. Suggest somewhere to meet him/her before the movie.

# **Reading and writing**

Match the pictures with the words.









páobù chànggē chīfàn xué Yīngyǔ 1 跑步 2 唱歌 3 吃饭 4 学 英语

## 生词 New words

shì 事	thing, matter	chànggē 唱歌	sing a song	
shàngwǔ 上午	morning	năinai 奶奶	grandmother	
fēn 分	minute	dào 到	get to (a place),	
kè 刻	quarter (of an hour)	yùndòng 运动	sports	
Yīngyǔ 英语	English	wǎnfàn 晚饭	dinner	
zhōngwǔ 中午	noon	yīnyuè 音乐	music	
cài 菜	food, dish	tĩng 听	listen	
xiàwǔ 下午	afternoon	yīnyuèhuì 音乐会	concert	
pǎobù 跑步	jog	shēngrìkǎ 生日卡	birthday card	
xiě 写	write	bókè 博客	blog	
diànzǐ yóujiàn 电子 邮件 email				



2 Read Wang Yu's weekend planner.

8		zhōu mò jìhuà bù Xīngqīllù 周末 计划 簿 星期六
8 y	rào zuò 要做	shángwǔ xué Yīngyǔ 上午 8:45 学 英语
=	de shì	zhōngwǔ gēn péngyou chī Rìběncài 中午 12:30 跟朋友吃日本菜
=	リチ	ridwů gēn gēge pǎobù 下午 3:15 跟 哥哥 跑步
1		wǎnshang gēn Shǐdifū kàn diànyǐng 晚上 8:00 跟史蒂夫看电影,
事		zài diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu jiàn 在电影院门口见
- b	pèiwànglù	gěi Mǎkè xiě diànzǐ yóuJiàn 给马克 写 电子邮件
	命芯求	
	要做 de shì <b>的事</b>	zhōngwǔ gēn péngyou chĩ Rìběncài 中午 12:30 跟朋友吃日本菜 xiàwǔ gēn gēge pǎobù 下午 3:15 跟哥哥 跑步 wǎnshang gên Shǐdifū kàn diànyǐng 晚上 8:00 跟史蒂夫看电影, zài diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu jiàn 在电影院门口见 gěi Mǎkè xiě diànzǐ yóujiàn

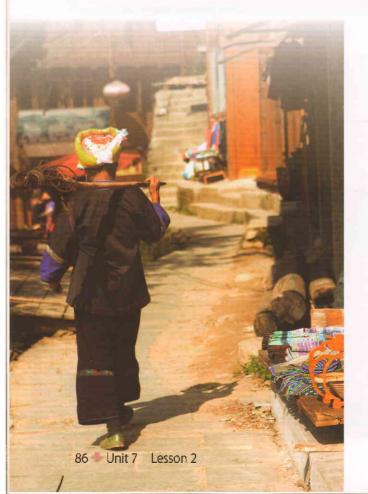
	Weekend planner 星期日
ào zuò 要做	shàngwǔ xué chànggē 上午 10:15 学 唱歌
de shì 的事	zhōngwǔ kàn yéye nǎinai 中午 12:00 看爷爷奶奶
	xiàwǔ dào dàxué zuò yùndòng 下午 4:45 到大学做运动
	wǎnshang zài jiā chi wǎnfàn 晚上 6:00 在家吃晚饭
	xué Yîngyů 8:00 学 英语
èiwànglù	qǐng yīnyuè lǎoshī qù tīng yīnyuèhuì 请音乐老师去听音乐会;
备忘录	gěi Mǎkè xiě shēngrìkǎ xiě bókè 给马克写生日卡:写博客

## 3 Answer the questions.

Wáng Yù Xīngqīliù shàngwǔ zuò shénme

- 1 王 玉星期六 上午 做 什么?
- Wáng Yù Xīngqīliù wǎnshang qù nǎli 2 王 玉星期六 晚上 夫 哪里?
- ・ エ ユ 生列ハ ・寛工 A 加主 Wáng Yù Xīngqītiān xiàwǔ zuò shénme
- 3 王玉星期天下午做什么?
  - Wáng Yù zài năli zuò yùndòng
- 4 王 玉在哪里做运动? Wáng Yù nǎ tiān xiễ bókè
- 5 王玉哪天写博客?
- Write a weekend planner for yourself.
- 5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your weekend schedules in Activity 4.

Nǐ Xīngqīliù yǒu shénme jìhuù 你星期六有 什么 计划?
Nǐ zhōumò qù kàn diànyǐng ma 你 周末 去看 电影 吗?
Zhège Xīngqītiān nǐ yào qù nǎli 这个星期天你要去哪里?



## Language in use

#### Adverbial expressions of time

#### Look at the sentences.

Xîngqîllù 星期六	wŏ 我	bù gōngzuò 不 工作。
Wŏ	Xîngqîliù	bù gōngzuò
我	星期六	不工作。

I don't work on Saturdays.

Mingtiān	Annà hé wǒ	qù kàn diànyǐng		
明天	安娜和我	去看 电影。		
Annà hé wǒ	míngtiān	qù kàn diànyǐng		
安娜和我	明天	去看 电影。		
Tomorrow Anna and Lwill go to see a movie				

Jīntiān wǎnshang	wŏ	xué Yīngyǔ		
今天 晚上	我	学 英语。		
wŏ	jīntiān wǎnshang	xué Yīngyǔ		
我	今天 晚上	学 英语。		
I will study English tonight.				

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

Adverbial expressions of time ...

- □ 1 can go before or after the subject.
- 2 can go at the end of the sentence.
- 3 do not need prepositions.

## Put the words in brackets in the correct places in the sentences.

Wáng Yù qù chĩ Zhōngcān míngtiān

- 1 王玉去吃中餐。(明天)
  - Annà hé wǒ yīqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng
- 2 安娜和我一起去看 电影。 Xīngqīliù wǎnshang (星期六 晚上)

Wǒ qù tīng yīnyuèhuì míngtiān xiàwǔ sì diǎn

- 3 我去听音乐会。(明天下午四点)
- Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

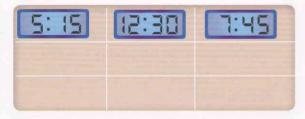
## Different ways of telling the time

## Look at the different ways of telling the time.

8:00	8:10
bā diǎn	bā diǎn shí fēn
八点	八点十分
8:15	8:30
bā diǎn shíwǔ fēn	bā diǎn sānshí fēn
八点十五分	八点 三十分
bā diğn yī kè	bā diặn bàn
八点一刻	八点半

8:45	
bā diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn	
八点四十五分/	
8:50	9:00
bā diğn wüshi fēn	jiǔ diǎn
八点五十分	九点

Now write two ways of telling each of these times.



2 Work in pairs. Use the appointment cards to act out the conversation.



Nǐ jǐ yuè jǐ hào qù kàn yīshēng 你几月几号去看 医生?

Jǐ diǎn 几点?

Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

# Expressing future tense with



## Look at the sentences.

A decode to I		A di combini		Predica	te
Adverbial (Time)	Subject	Adverbial (Time)	Modal verb	Verb	Complement / Object
Jintiān	wŏ		yào	qù	yīyuàn
今天	我		要	去	医院。
	wŏ	Xīngqīsān	yào	xué	chànggē
	我	星期三	要	学	唱歌。
Mingtiān	bàba		yào	qù	Běljīng
明天	爸爸		要	去	北京。
	Māma 妈妈	wǎnshang 晚上	yào 要	gōngzuò 工作。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 要 in these sentences means "want to" or "be going to".
- □ 2 要 is used before another verb.
- □ 3 要 indicates an action in the past.
- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

kàn diànyǐng jiějie míngtiān yào

- 1看电影/姐姐/明天/要。
- wǒ Xīngqīliù qù Shànghǎi yào
- 2 我/星期六/去 上海 /要。

jîntiān wănshang xué Zhōngwén Mǎkè yào

- 3 今天 晚上 /学 中文 /马克/要。
  - Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

# **Communication activity**

Work in groups.

You work in different regional offices of a marketing agency. You need to schedule a one-hour teleconference call with your colleagues, who all work in the same time zone as you.

First make a weekly schedule.

	Xīngqīrì 星期日	Xingqiyi 星期一	Xīngqī' èr 星期二	Xingqisān 星期三	Xingqisì 星期四	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Xīngqīliù 星期六
				1	2	3	4
1	5	6	7	8	9	10	11

Now talk to each other and find a time that works for all of you. You need to:

- suggest times when you are available.
- give reasons if the time is not good for you.

Zhège Xīngqī A: 这个星期	nǐ yǒu shíjiān ma 你有时间吗?
	wǒ yào 我 要。
0.1	ne 呢?
Kěyǐ Jǐ diản B: 可以。几点?	
diǎn zěn A: 点 怎	meyàng 《名样?
Méi wènti B:没问题。	

Work with another group. Discuss and find a time that works for all of you.

## **Cultural Corner**

# Too late or too early?

The Chinese concept of time tends to be flexible. Chinese people do not adhere to timetables in a strict, sequential manner. Being on time is not very important and being late is not usually punished.

If someone of a very high position or rank is to attend a party, an unspoken rule of Chinese culture says they should be among the last to arrive as well as being among the first to leave.

# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
门	gate	门、问
P	foot	跑、跟

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.



跳

Match the words with the meanings.

- wèntí
- 1 问题
  - fángjiān
- 2 房间
- qën
- 3 跟
- păobù 4 跑步

a jog

- c room
- d question

Trace the characters in the boxes.

















# **Review and practice**

Circle the odd word out.

4 看 电影

zhōngwŭ ììhuà wänshang 1 中午 计划 晚上 păobù dă lánaiú chîfàn 跑步 打篮球 2 吃饭 kàn fàn tīng 听 3 看 饭 kàn diànying ting yinyuè käishĭ 听 音乐 开始

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

wó chỉ Zhôngcân yĩgǐ gên Wáng Yù 1我/吃/中餐 /一起/跟/王玉/。 jidlăn ni xué chànggē yòo mingtian

2 几点 / 你 / 学 唱歌 / 要 / 明天 /? qù wǒ pǎobù bā diǎn

- 3 去/我/跑步/八点。 wǒ wǎnshang tīng yīnyuèhuì qù
- 4 我/晚上/听音乐会/去/。

Write the times in characters.

1 3:30	3 15:45	5 23:50
2 7:55	4 19:48	6 13:00

Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

bā diặn bàn jĭ diǎn 八点半 几点 kàn diànyǐng qën 看 电影 跟

Míngtiān nī yào zuò shénme

A: 明天 你要做什么?

māma qù tīng yīnyuèhuì Nǐ ne B: 我\_\_\_\_\_妈妈去听音乐会。你呢?

Wŏ gēn Shǐdìfū qù

A: 我 跟 史蒂夫去

Nimen mingtian

Jiàn

B: 你们 明天 见?

Wänshang

A: 晚上 。

Now work in pairs. Act out the conversation.

# Vocabulary extension

Look at the activities.







mǎi dōngxi 买东西



kàn diànshì 看 电视



kàn bǐsài 看 比赛

Now work in pairs. Ask about and say the activities you like and what time you usually do them.

₩ŏ xǐhuan yóuyŏng

A: 我 喜欢 游泳。

Wǒ zǎoshang qì diǎn yóuyǒng

我 早上 七 点 游泳。

Nĭ ne

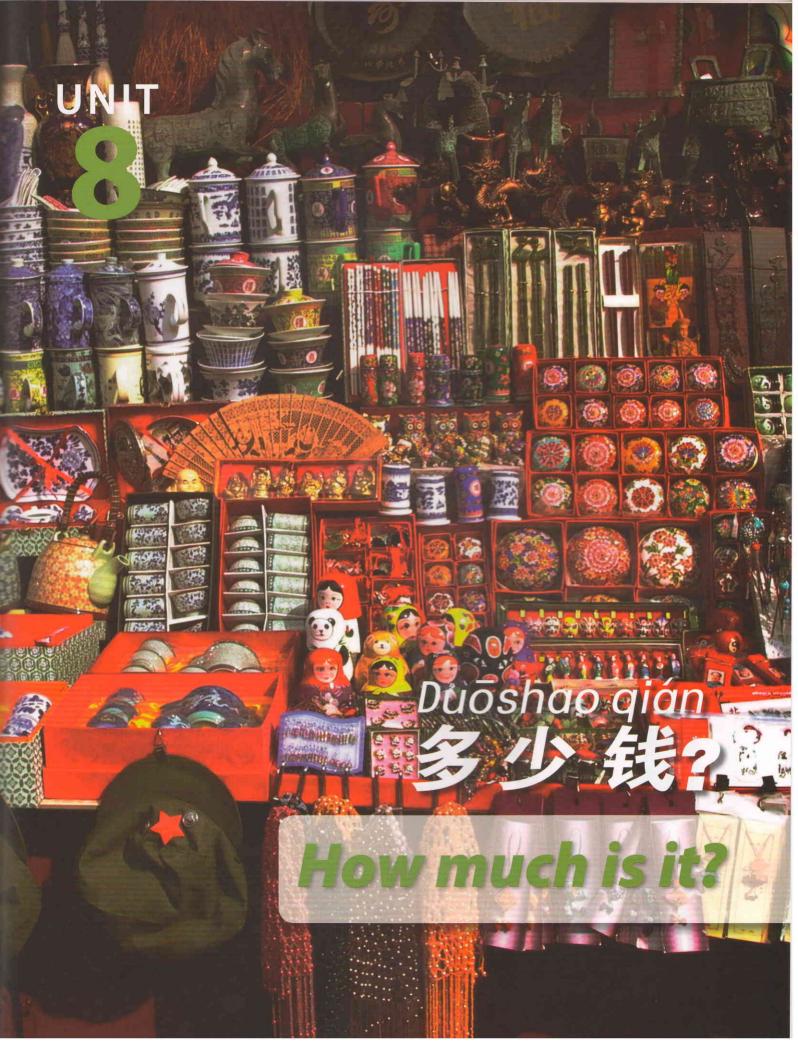
你 呢?

Wŏ xǐhuan

B: 我 喜欢 ......

# **Vocabulary list**

这个	zhège	pron.	this	分	fēn	n.	minute
周末	zhōumò	n.	weekend	刻	kè	n.	quarter (of an hour)
有	yŏu	V.	have	英语	Yīngyŭ	n.	English
时间	shíjiān	n.	time	中午	zhōngwǔ	n.	noon
要	yào	V.	want	菜	cài	n.	food, dish
爷爷	yéye	n.	grandfather	下午	xiàwǔ	n.	afternoon
计划	jìhuà	n.	plan	跑步	pǎobù	v.	jog
没有	méiyǒu	V.	not have	写	xiĕ	v.	write
一起	yīqĭ	adv.	together	电子邮件	diànzĭ yóujiàn	n.	email
电影	diànyĭng	n.	movie, film	唱歌	chànggē	ν.	sing a song
几点	jĭ diǎn		what time	奶奶	năinai	n.	grandmother
点	diăn	n.	o'clock	到	dào	ν.	get to (a place), arrive
半	bàn	num.	half (an hour)	运动	yùndòng	n.	sports
开始	kāishĭ	V.	start	晚饭	wănfàn	n.	dinner
电影院	diànyĭngyuàn	n.	cinema	音乐	yīnyuè	n.	music
门口	ménkŏu	n.	entrance, doorway	听	tīng	V	listen
见	jiàn	V.	see, meet	音乐会	yīnyuèhuì	n.	concert
太	tài	adv.	very, too	生日卡	shēngrikă	n.	birthday card
了	le	particle		博客	bókè	n.	blog
朋友	péngyou	n.	friend	游泳	yóuyŏng	V.	swim
明天	míngtiān	n.	tomorrow	买	măi	V.	buy
晚上	wänshang	n.	evening	东西	dōngxi	n.	thing
事	shì	n.	thing, matter	电视	diànshì	n.	television
上午	shàngwǔ	n.	morning	比赛	bĭsài	n.	competition, match



# Vocabulary and listening



Number the colours in the order you hear them.



hēisè □ a 黑色



lùsè b 绿色



hóngsè □ c 红色



huángsè □ d 黄色



báisè □ e 白色



lánsè □┎蓝色

Now listen again and say the colours.



Number the clothes items in the order you hear them.





máoyī d毛衣







qúnzi



dàyī 大衣

Now listen again and say the clothes items.



Listen to the conversation. Anna and Wang Yu are buying some clothes at a market.

Shòuhuòyuán Qǐngwèn nǐ yào mǎi shénme 售 货员: 请问你要买什么

> yīfu 衣服?

Wǒ yào mǎi yī tiáo qúnzi Ānnà 安娜: 我要买一条裙子。

Shòuhuòyuán Qing lái zhèbian

售货员: 请来这边 ……

> Zhè tiáo zěnmeyàng 这条 怎么样?

Annà Tài hóng le 安娜. 太红了!

Shòuhuòyuán Zhè tiáo kěyĭ ma 售货员: 这条可以吗?

> Ānnà Wŏ bù xǐhuan lánsè 安娜: 我不喜欢蓝色。

> > Yǒu mélyǒu hēlsè de 有没有黑色的?

Zhè tiáo hēisè de

Shòuhuòyuán 这条黑色的 售货员:

> zěnmeyàna 怎么样?



Listen again and check the true statements.

Ānnà yào mài hóngsè de qúnzi 1 安娜 要 买 红色 的裙子。

Annà xihuan lánsè

□ 2 安娜 喜欢 蓝色。

Ānnà măile yī tiáo hēisè de qúnzî

□ 3 安娜买了一条 黑色的裙子。 Qúnzī de jiàqian shì qīshíjiǔ kuàī

□ 4 裙子的价钱是七十九块。 Qúnzi de jiàqian bù quì

□ 5 裙子的价钱不贵。

Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3. Use different colours, clothes items and prices.

Annà Bù tài hāokàn 安娜: 不太好看! Shòuhuòyuán Shìshi zhè tiáo

售货员: 试试这条。

Annà Zhè tiáo bùcuò Duōshao qián 安娜: 这条不错。多少钱?

Shòuhuòyuán Èr bǎi qīshíjiǔ kuài 售货员:二百七十九块。

Annà Piányi yīdiǎnr kěyǐ ma 安娜: 便宜一点儿可以吗?

Shòuhuòyuán Duìbuqǐ zhège jiàqian shì zuì 售货员:对不起,这个价钱是最

> piányi de 便宜的。

Annà Wáng Yù zhège jiàqian guì ma 安娜: 王玉,这个价钱贵吗?

Wáng Yù Bù guì Mǎi zhè tiáo ba 王玉: 不贵。买这条吧。

Annà Hảo gèi nǐ qián 安娜: 好, 给你钱。

Shòuhuòyuán Xièxie 售货员: 谢谢。

生词 New words

shòuhuò		shì	
售货员	assistant	试	try
măi		bùcuò	
买	buy	不错	not bad
yīfu		qián	
衣服	clothes	钱	money
tiáo		bǎi	
条	measure word	百	hundred
qúnzi	11.4	kuài	currency unit of
裙子	skirt	块	China (yuan)
lái 来		piányi	
不 zhèbian	come	便宜	cheap
这边	this way	yīdiǎnr 一点儿	a little
hóng	triis way		a nittle
红	red	jiàqian 价钱	price
lánsè	100		price
蓝色	blue	guì 贵	expensive
hēisè		la an	
黑色	black	pa	rtide for making ggestions
hăokàn		su	ggestions
好看	good-looking		

# **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### The tones of





Look at the tone marks for —. How does the tone of - change?

yì tiān 一天

yì nián 一年

yì wăn

yî kuài

一晚

一块

Now listen and say the words.

- Listen and check the correct tones for —.

1 一种

- a yīzhong b yìzhong

2 一起

- 🗌 a yìqǐ
- □ b yīqǐ

3 一双

- ☐ a yìshuāng ☐ b yīshuāng
- Listen and match the tones for —.

1一件

a yī

2一条

b yí

c yĭ

d yì

Now say the words aloud.

Listen and say the words.

măi 1 买

lái 来

shìshi 试试

piányi 2 便宜

bù guì 不贵

jiàqian 价钱

máovī

kùzi

aúnzi

3 毛衣

裤子

裙子

## Work in pairs.

Student A: You are a customer in a dothes shop. You like a dothes item but it is too expensive.

Student B: You are a shop assistant. You agree to sell the item at a lower price.

No vào mải

A: 我 要 买 ······

Qǐng lái zhèbian Zhè tiáo zĕnmeyàng

B: 请来这边。这条怎么样?

Bù cuờ Duōshao gián

A: 不错。多少 钱?

B: ····· 块。

Tài guì le piányi yīdiánr

A: 太 贵 了, 便宜 一点儿,

zěnmeyàng

…… 怎么样?

H**ǎ**o ba

B: 好吧。

Gĕi nĭ qián

A:给你钱。

Xièxie

B: 谢谢。



## CHINESE TO GO

Talking about shopping

Dăzhé ma

打折吗?

Any discount?

Suiblàn kànkan

随便看看。 Feel free to take a look.

# Reading and writing

## Match the pictures with the words.









fúzhuāng shìcháng 市场 1 服装 gòuwù zhōngxîn 2 购物 中心

chāoshì 3 超市 shūdiàn 4 书店



## Read Steve's blog and answer the auestions.

Shǐdìfū xǐhuan kàn shū ma 1 史蒂夫 喜欢 看 书 吗?

Shǐdìfū mài de kùzi duōshao alán 2 史蒂夫 买的 裤子 多少 钱?

Tā shàngge yuè mǎile shénme 3他 上个 月买了什么?

Xlăoxião shi shei 4 小小 是 谁?

# Beijing Life 北京 生活

主页

相册 档案

○**没表文章** 

Qīyuè èr rì Xīngqīsi 七月二日星期四



Zhè shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de Běijing shūdiàn 这是我最喜欢的北京书店。我 xǐhuan kàn shū 喜欢 看书!

分事 | 评论 (06) | 阅读 (315) | 固定链接 | 发表于15:36



Zhège fúzhuāng shìchẳng hèn yuǎn dànshì jiàqian 这个服装 市场很远, 但是价钱 piányi Xingqitlān wǒ mǎlle yì tiáo kùzi 便宜。星期天我买了一条裤子. èrshí kuải hěn piányi Wǒ gěi gēge mǎile 二十块,很便宜。我给哥哥买了 tǐxù tā xǐhuan hēisè hé báisè de tixù T恤、他喜欢黑色和白色的T恤。 分字 | 评论 (16) | 阅读 (476) | 國定链接 | 发表于16:29



Zhè shì yǒumíng de gòuwù zhōngxīn 这是有名的购物中心 "Village"。 上 ge yuè wǒ zài zhèli mǎile yī shuāng xié hé yī jiàn 个月我在这里买了一 双 鞋和一件 Měi gè zhōumò zhèli dōu yǒu hěn duō rén 大衣。每个周末这里都有很多人。

分事 | 评论 (37) | 阅读 (238) | 固定链接 | 发表于21:39



Zhè shì wǒ hé Xiǎoxiǎo Xiǎoxiǎo shì chāoshì de 这是我和小小。小小是超市的 shòuhuòyuán Měl gè Xīngqītiān zǎoshang wǒ dōu zài 售货员。每个星期天早上我都在 zhèll mặi dōngxi 这里买东西。

分享 | 评论 (11) | 阅读 (139) | 固定链接 | 发表于22:00

## 生词 New words

shūdiàn 书店	bookshop	yǒumíng 有名	famous	jiàn 件	item, piece
fúzhuōng 服装		gòuwù zhô		dàyī 大衣	coat
yuǎn 远	far away	shàngge 上个	last	měl <del>在</del>	every, each
kùzi		zhèli		hěn duō	
裤子 tīxù	trousers	这里 shuāng	here	很多 chāoshì	a lot of
T恤	T-shirt	双	pair	超市	supermarket
báisè 白色	white	xié 鞋	shoes	dōngxi 东西	thing

## Complete the sentences.

Shľdìfū Běijîng de shūdiàn 1 史蒂夫 \_\_\_\_\_ 北京的书店。 hěn vuăn 很 远。 Tā gěi gēge mǎile 3 他给哥哥买了 和 de tîxù 的T恤。 dōu yǒu hěn duō rén Měi gè zhōumò 4 每个 周末 都 有 很 多 人。 Měi gè Xīngqītiān zǎoshang tā dōu zài 5 每个星期天 早上他都在 măi döngxi

## Read the list of clothes that Wang Yu has bought, and answer the questions.

买东西。

Jîǔyuè yī rì 九月一日	dàyī 大衣	¥ 500.00
Jiǔyuè wǔ rì 九月 五日	máoyī 毛衣	¥ 160.00
Shíyīyuè qi rì 十一月七日	qúnzl 裙子	¥ 120.00
Shíyīyuè shí rì 十一月十日	tīxù T恤	¥ 38.00
Shí'èryuè shí'èr rì 十二月十二日	kùzi 裤子	¥ 135.00
10 100 C		

Wáng Yù mǎi de dàyī duōshao qián エエアが出土をタル 発。

1 王 玉 买 的大衣 多少 钱?

Wáng Yù Jiǔyuè wǔ rì mǎile shénme

- 2 王 玉九月五日买了什么? Tā mǎi de qúnzi duōshao qián
- 3 她 买的裙子 多少 钱?

Wáng Yù Shí' èryuè shí' èr rì măile shénme

- 4 王 玉十二月十二日买了什么?
- 5 Write a blog about your own life.

## Language in use

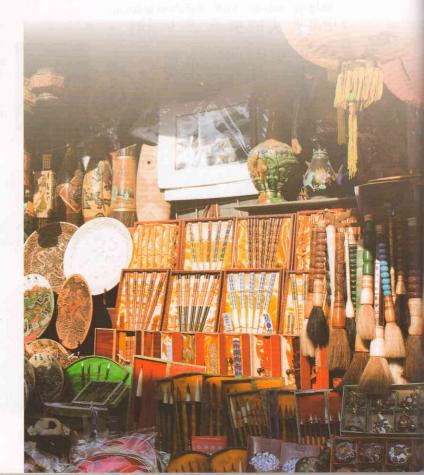
#### Measure words

## Look at the examples for using measure words.

gè	jiàn	tiáo	shuāng
个	件	条	双
rén	máoyī	qúnzi	wàzl
人	毛衣	裙子	袜子
people	sweater	skirt	socks
píngguǒ	tīxù	lù	yǎnjing
苹果	<b>T恤</b>	路	眼睛
apple	T-shirt	road	eyes
xīngqī	shì	máojīn	shǒu
星期	事	毛巾	手
week	thing	towel	hands

## Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 ↑ is often used for clothing.
- □ 2 件 is usually used for people or objects.
- ☐ 3 条 is used for long and narrow objects.
- 4 双 is used for things that come in pairs.



2	Complete the	phrases	with	the	words	in	the	box.
---	--------------	---------	------	-----	-------	----	-----	------

		gè	shuāng 双	g	tiáo 条	jiàn 件	
1	yī —		ngyou 月友	3	sān <u>=</u>		dàyī 大衣
2	<b>y</b> ĭ	k 褙	ùzi 译	4	yī —		xié 鞋

## Turn to page 168 for more information.

Numerals	èr liǎng 二/两	

## Look at the phrases.

liǎng gè rén	èrshí'èr gè rén
两 个人	二十二 个 人
liǎng suì	wǔshí'èr suì
两 岁	五十二岁
liǎng tiǎn 两 天	di-èr tiān 第二天 the second day

## Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 两 is used for counting things.
- □ 3 两 is used for expressing quantity.

## Complete the phrases with 二 or 两.

jiàn yīfu	dì gèrén
1 件衣服	4 第 个人
shí kuải qián	shuāng xié
2 十块 钱	5 双 鞋
gè yuè	shí gè xǐngq
3 个月	6 十 个 星期

## Turn to page 168 for more information.

# Expressing past tense using

#### Look at the sentences.

				Prec	licate
Adverbial	Subject	Adverbial			Object /
			Verb	Particle	Complement
Shàngge					liăng jiàn
上个	wŏ		măi	le	两 件
Xīngqītiān	我		买	了	yīfu
星期天					衣服。
	Tā		qù	le	Běijīng
	他		去	了	北京。
	w.Y	_2. nr	LLX	I.	_=:4.
	wŏ 我	zài Měiguó 在美国		le	sān nián 三年。
	北	<b>仕 夫</b> 国	生	1	二千。

## Now check the two correct explanations.

- ☐ 2 了 Is used to indicate the completion of an action.
- ☐ 3 了 is always used before a number.

#### Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 He has studied Chinese for three years.
- 2 She bought a pair of black shoes.
- 3 They went to Shanghai.
- Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.

# **Communication activity**

## Work in groups.

You are going to set up a website for a designer clothing store, targeting Chinese customers. Think about the following:

- · the selection of clothes that you will sell online
- · the prices of similar clothes in your local shops
- · the prices in RMB
- name, telephone number, email and website of your online store
- date you plan to launch the online store
- Make notes and rough designs for the pages of your online store.
- Present the pages of your store to another group.
- Turn to pages 153 and 159 for more speaking practice.

## **Cultural Corner**

# To bargain or not to bargain?

For westerners who are used to fixed prices, bargaining in China can be one of the hardest things to get used to. However, it is a good idea to bargain in China, as tourists are often offered an inflated price in markets, small shops, restaurants and sometimes even hotels.

Here are some bargaining tips if you are in China:

- Learn a few common Chinese phrases, such as "it's too expensive" and "can you make it cheaper"?
- Take your time. Never buy anything at the first place you go to. Always shop around to compare prices.
- Decide how much you are willing to spend on an item before making an offer.
- If your offer is not accepted, try walking away. You will usually be called back for another round of negotiation if the shop is willing to sell.



# **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
ネ	clothes	裙
贝	shell	员

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

衫 贵 衬 贷

Match the words with the meanings.

	kùzi	
1	裤子	a skirt
	qúnzi	
2	裙子	b shopping
	gòuwù	
3	购物	e shop assistant
	shòuhuòyuán	
4	售货品	d trousers

Trace the characters in the boxes.



## Review and practice

Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences.

Wǒ mǎi le yī jiàn hēi máoyī 1 我买了一件<u>黑毛衣</u>。 Ānnà qù le Běijīng

2安娜去了北京。

Míngtiān shì Wáng Yù de shēngrì

3 明天 是 <u>王玉</u>的 生首。 Yǒngmín xǐhuan báisè

4 永民 喜欢 白色。

2 Complete the passage with \_ and \_.

Eryuè shí rì wǒ hé gè 二月 十 日,我和 一个 中éngyou mǎi le jiàn yīfu shuāngxié 朋友 买了 一件 衣服, 一双 鞋 hé shí zhāng shēngrìkǎ 和十 一 张 生日卡。

El Circle the odd word out.

hóngsè	lánsè	hēisè	shūdiàn
1 红色	蓝色	黑色	书店
máoyī 2 毛衣	tīxù	xié	qúnzi <del>}∏</del> ∠
2 七水	Thii	鞋	裙子
jlàn	shuāng	hóng	tiáo
3 件	双	红	条
jlàqian	bùguì	kuài	piányi
4 价钱	不贵	块	便宜
měi	gěi	shì	hǎokàn
5 买	给	试	好看

Match the pictures with the words.



# Vocabulary extension

## Match the pictures with the words.













wéijīn

1 围巾

duănkù 2 短裤

niúzăikù

3 牛仔裤

chènshān

4 衬衫

màozi

5 帽子

liányīgún 6 连衣裙

# **Vocabulary list**

售货员	shòuhuòyuán	n.	shop assistant
买	măi	ν.	buy
衣服	yīfu	n.	clothes
条	tiáo	measure word	
裙子	qúnzi	n.	skirt
来	lái	V.	come
这边	zhèbian	pron.	this way
红	hóng	adj.	red
蓝色	lánsè	n.	blue
黑色	hēisè	n.	black
好看	hăokàn	adj.	good-looking
试	shì	V.	try
不错	bùcuò	adj.	not bad
钱	qián	n.	money
百	băi	num.	hundred
块	kuài	measure word	currency unit of China (yuan)
便宜	piányi	adj.	cheap
一点儿	yīdiănr (	quantifier	a little
价钱	jiàqian	n.	price
贵	guì	adj.	expensive
PE	ba	particle	(for making suggestions)
书店	shūdiàn	n.	bookshop
服装市场	fúzhuāng shìchăng	n.	clothes market
远	yuǎn	adj.	far away

裤子	kùzi	n.	trousers
T·M	tīxù	n.	T-shirt
白色	báisè	n.	white
有名	yŏumíng	adj.	famous
购物中心	gòuwù zhōngxīn	n.	shopping centre
上个	shängge		iast
这里	zhèli	pron.	here
双	shuāng	measure word	pair
鞋	xîé	n.	shoes
件	jiàn	measure word	item, piece
大衣	dàyī	n.	coat
每	měi	pron.	every, each
很多	h <del>ě</del> n duō		a lot of
超市	chāoshì	n.	supermarket
东西	dōngxi	n.	thing
绿色	lûsè	n.	green
黄色	huángsè	n.	yellow
毛衣	máoyī	n.	sweater
围巾	wéijîn	n.	scarf
短裤	duănkù	n.	shorts
牛仔裤	niúzăikù	n.	jeans
衬衫	chènshān	n.	shirt
帽子	màozi	n.	hat
连衣裙	liányīqún	n.	one-piece dress

## **Review 2**

# Vocabulary

Complete the words with the characters in the box.

huà 话	shǎo 少	chī 吃	服	jiān 间	dòng 动
fáng 1房_	3	yùn 运_		diàn 5 电	
yī 2 衣	4	hǎo 好_		duō 6多	

2 Match the words with the meanings.

hàomǎ

- 1号码 dìzhǐ
- a bookshop
- dizhi Ֆե-Ա
- 2 地址 diànyǐng
- **b** thing
- diànyǐng 3 电影
- c address
- shūdiàn
- 4 书店
- d apartment building
- dōngxl 5 东西
- e number, code
- gōngyù
- 6公寓
- f movie
- Complete the email with the words in the box.

ménkŏu	rì	shëngri	diànyĭng
门口	日	生首	电影

## 未读邮件×

## ③ 返回 ⑤回复 ⑤回复全部 ♂转发 ◎删除

Lĩ Lì 李丽: Nǐ hảo 你好! Jiŭyuè shibā zhège Xīngqiliù shì wŏ 九月十八\_ \_\_,这个星期六是我 women yiqi kan zěnmeyàna de \_, 我们一起看 ,怎么样? Wänshang qī diān Běijīngdiànyǐngyuàn 晚上 七点,北京 电影院 jiàn 见。

> Zhāng Míng 张明

## Grammar



Listen and complete the activities on Mark's to-do list for the day.

gēn lǎoshī □1跟老师	<b>4</b>	Zhōngwén _ 中文
gēn Ānnà □2跟安娜	□ 5	yùndòng 运动
shū □ 3 书	□ 6	chāoshì _ 超市

Now listen again and check the things that he has already done.

2 Match the measure words with the nouns.

gè Jiàn	tiáo shuāng
个 件	条 双
píngguǒ	dàyī
1 苹果	6 大衣
lù	kùzi
2 路	7 裤子
qúnzi	xié
3 裙子	8 鞋
péngyou	shì
4 朋友	9事
tīxù	xīngqī
5 T恤	10 星期

Write the times in numbers or characters. Write two ways of saying the time where appropriate.

qī diǎn èrshiwǔ fēn

- 1七点二十五分
  - bādiản yī kè
- 2 八点一刻 jiǔ diǎn bàn
- 3九点半
- 4 12:45
- 5 6:30
- 6 5:00

4	Circle th	ne correct	pinyin	for
	A 1 - A 1 - A -			

běn shū

1 - (yī/yāo) 本书

hào fángjiān

2 1 (yī /yāo) 78 号 房间

gè píngguŏ

3 — (yī /yāo) 个苹果 diànhuà hàomă shì

4 电话 号码是 78563491 (yī /yāo)

tiān

5 — (yī / yāo) 天 Xīnggī

6 星期— (yī/yāo)

Look at Xiaoxiao's notes on the calendar and answer the questions.



- Jiějie de shēngri shì nă tiān
- 1 姐姐的 生日 是哪 天? Xlǎoxlǎo qǐng jlějle zuò shénme
- 2 小小 请 姐姐 做 什么? Xiǎoxiǎo yào mǎi shénme
- 3 小小要买什么?
- 6 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

jĭ	shuāng	èr	liǎng
几	双		两
fēn	năli	ne	yĕ
分	哪里	呢	也

Nǐ hǎo qǐngwèn xlànzài jǐ diǎn 1 A: 你好,请问 现在几点?

diǒn shíwǔ B: \_\_\_\_\_ 点 十五\_\_\_\_。

2 A;	wo shì Yīngguórén nǐ shì 我是英国人,你是	rén 人?
	wǒ shì Yīngguórén 我 是英国人。	
	Nǐ yǒu gè jiějie 你有 个姐姐?	
	Wò yòu yī gè jiějie tā yòu yī 我有一个姐姐,她有一	
	dà yǎnjing 大 眼睛。	
4 A:	Nǐ de shēngrì shì jǐ yuè 你的生日是几月?	
		?
	Yě shì Èryuè 也是二月。	

## Integrated skills

Listen and complete the passage.

Jīntlān shì wǒ hé māma yīqǐ 今天是 , 我和妈妈一起qù mǎi yīfu Wǒ mǎile Shàngge去买衣服。我买了 \_\_\_\_。上个xīngqītiān bàba gěi wǒ mǎi le dàn星期天爸爸给我买了 \_\_\_\_,但shì wǒ xǐhuan Māma gěi bàba mǎi le是我喜欢\_\_\_\_。妈妈给爸爸买了tā hěn xǐhuan

2 Listen and write the students' telephone numbers.

,他很喜欢。

	jing Dàxué 京 大学
xuéshēng xìngmíng 学生 姓名 Lǐ Bái 李白	e话 号码
Wáng Ān 王 安	
Liú Lì 刘丽	

## B Complete the student record using your own information.

xìngmíng 姓名: niánlíng 年龄: diànhuà hàomǎ 电话 号码: diànzǐ yóuxiāng 电子 邮箱: dìzhǐ 地址: guójí 国籍: chūshēngdì 出生地:

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other. Use the prompts below to help you.

Qǐngwèn nǐ jiào shénme míngzi A: 请问, 你叫 什么 名字? Wŏ iiào B: 我叫\_\_\_\_。 Nĩ shì nă quó rén A: 你是哪国人? Wǒ shì B: 我是\_\_\_\_\_。 Nǐ duō dà A: 你多大? Wǒ B: 我\_\_\_\_\_。 Nǐ de diànhuà hàomă shì duōshao A: 你的电话 号码是多少? Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme A: 你的电子 邮箱 是 什么? Nǐ zhù zài năli A: 你住在哪里? Wǒ zhù zài B: 我住在\_\_\_\_\_。

## 4 Work in pairs.

Student A: Decide the colour and price for the following clothes items.



**Student B:** Decide the colour and price for the following clothes items.



Now ask and answer questions about each other's clothes items, and complete the sales record.

rìgī 日期 (date)	dōngxi 东西 (item)	yánsè 颜色 (colour)	jiàqian 价钱 (price)
8月2号			

5 Complete the conversation using the sentences in **Enjoy Chinese** the box. **Guess what these ancient Chinese characters** resemble. Běijing diànyingyuàn ménkou shuĭ a 北京 电影院 门口。 a 水 Wänshang qīdiān zěnmeyàng b 晚上 七点,怎么样? yáng Qīyuè shí' èr hào b 羊 c七月十二号。 nű Wǒ qǐng nǐmen kàn dlànyǐng zěnmeyàng c女 d 我请你们看 电影,怎么样? niú 4 Nĩ zhidào Zhāng Hóng de shēngrì shì nă tiần ma A: 你知道 张 红 的 生日 是哪 天 吗? mén e [] Mingtiān Zhēn de ma Now match the ancient characters with the A: 明天? 真 的 吗? modern ones. Shì wò gĕi tā mǎi le yī tláo wéijīn Nǐ ne B: 是, 我给她买了一条 围巾。 你呢? Wŏ bù zhīdào A:我不知道。 Tài hảo le wòmen mingtiān jĩ diặn jiàn B: 太好了, 我们 明天 几点 见? A: Hặc zài năli B: 好, 在哪里? A:\_\_\_\_ Hảo mingtiãn wănshang bùjiàn-bùsàn B: 好, 明天 晚上 不见不散!

104 Review 2



# Vocabulary and listening



## Match the pictures with the words for places.



yóujú xǐshǒujiān fànguǎn yínháng 1 邮局 2 洗手间 3 饭馆 4 银行

Now listen and say the words.



# Listen and complete the blanks with the words in the box.

dōngbian 东边	xībian 西边	nánbian 南边
	běibian 1 北边	
2	4	

## 生词 New words







#### B Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Yeong-min are asking for directions to Anna's house.

shǐdifū Ānnà zhù zài nǎr 史蒂夫:安娜住在哪儿?

Yǒngmín Gōngyuán Lù sānshísì hào lóu 永民: 公园路 34 号楼

Shǐdifū Zěnme zǒu 史蒂夫: 怎么走?

Yǒngmín Wènwen lùrén ba 永民:问问路人吧!

. . . . .

Yǒngmín Qǐngwèn zhè shì Gōngyuán Lù ma 永民:请问,这是公园路吗?

Lùrén Bù shì Gōngyuán Lù zài yóujú 致人, 不是, 公园 致存邮局

路人: 不是。公园路在邮局 de hòubign

的后边。

Yǒngmín Wǒmen zěnme zǒu 永民: 我们怎么走?

Lùrén Wăng nánbian zǒu 路人: 往南边走。



Lí zhèr yuán bù yuán Yŏngmín 永民: 离这儿远不远?

Lùrén Bù vuăn 路人· 不远。

Qǐngwèn zhè shì Gōngyuán Lù ma Shĭdìfū 史蒂夫:请问这是公园路吗?

Lùrén 路人,对。

Yŏngmin Zhèli yǒu méiyǒu sānshísì hào lóu 永民: 这里有没有 34 号楼?

Yǒu zài yínháng fùjìn shūdiàn Lùrén

路人: 有, 在银行附近,书店 de qiánbian Wăng qián zǒu wù

的前边。往前走五

fēnzhōng zuŏyòu 分钟 左右。



4 Listen again and check the correct answers.

Shǐdìfū qù Ānnà jiā yào wàng năbian zǒu 1 史蒂夫去安娜家,要往哪边走?

nánbian □ a 南边

běibian □ b 北边

Shǐdìfū hé Yŏngmín lí Ānnà jìā yuàn bù yuàn

2 史蒂夫和 永民 离安娜家 远 不 远?

vuăn

bùyuăn

□ a 沅

□b不远

Gōngyuán Lù yǒu mélyǒu sānshísì hào lóu 3 公园 路有没有 34

γŏu

号 楼?

běi

□ a 右

méiyŏu □ b 没有

Now mark Anna's apartment with an "X" and write "Göngyuán Lù" in the correct place.

北 xuéxiào 学校 yóujú göngyuán 邮局 公园 yinháng shūdiàn 银行 书店 yiyuan 医院



5 Listen and complete the sentences.

Fùjìn yinháng 1 附近 银行。 Yóujú zài shūdiàn de

2 邮局在 书店 的 。

Yīyuàn lí zhèr

3 医院离文儿。

6 Work in groups. Act out the conversation in Activity 3 using the words here.

> vīvuàn xuéxido dàxué 学校 大学 医院 yinháng yóujú shūdiàn 书店 邮局 银行

## **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### Retroflex "r"



Listen and check the words you hear.

		zhè
1	a	议

□b汶儿

nă

năr

2 | a 哪

□b哪儿

yīdiăn

vīdiǎnr

3 □ a — 点

□ b 一点儿

yī kuài

yīkuàir

4 □ a ─ 块

□ b 一块儿

Now listen again and say the words.



Read the sentences aloud.

Zhèr yǒu yī gè gōngyuán

1 这儿有一个公园。

Wáng Yù zhù zài năr

2 王玉住在哪儿?

Chāoshì yǒu yīdiặng yuǎn

3 超市 有 一点儿 远。

Women yikuàir kàn diànying hảo ma

4 我们一块儿看 电影, 好吗?

Now listen and repeat.



Listen and say the words.

năr 1 哪儿

zhèr 这儿 zěnme 怎么

nánbian

döngbian

xibian

běibian

2 南边

东边

西边

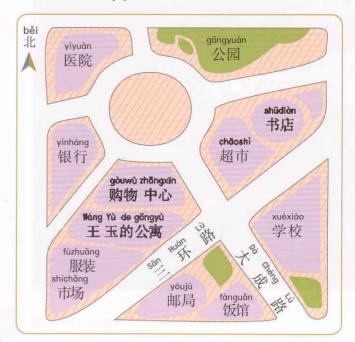
北边

aiánblan 3 前边

hòubian

fùjìn

后边 附近 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about Wang Yu's neighbourhood. Use the prompts below to help you.



Nĩ hảo Qĩngwèn 你好! 请问, …… 在哪儿? lí zhèr yuǎn ma …… 离这儿远 吗? shì bù shì zài ……是 不 是 在……?

### CHINESE TO GO



Asking and answering questions about places

Qĭnqwèn fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu xǐshǒujīān 请问, 附近有没有洗手间? Excuse me, is there a toilet nearby?

wǒ bù zhīdảo Bùhặovìsī 不好意思,我不知道。 Sorry, I don't know.

Yǒu yīzhí wǎng qián zǒu 有,一直往前走。 Yes, go straight ahead.

Yǒu zài zuǒbian yòubian 有,在左边/右边。 Yes, on the left/right.

## **Reading and writing**

Match the pictures with the words.









gōngyù 1 公寓

fángzi 2 房子

fángjiān 3 房间

sùshè 4 宿舍



2 Read the advertisements and answer the questions. Mark wants to rent a flat.

Dàxué Lù de gōngyù yŏu duōshao gè fángjlān

- 1 大学路的公寓有 多少 个房间?
- Dàxué Lù de gōngyù de jiāotōng zěnmeyàng
- 2 大学路的公寓的 交通 怎么样?
  - Nánjīng Lù de gōngyù yŏu duō dà
- 3南京路的公寓有多大?
  - Nánjîng Lù de gōngyù fùjìn yŏu shénme
- 4 南京路的公寓附近有 什么?

### 生词 New words

chūzū		jiāotāng	
出租	rent out, lease	交通	transportation
fángzi		fängbiàn	
房子	flat, house	方便	convenient
jìn		liánxì	
近	near	联系	contact
döngbian		Nánjing	
东边	east	南京	Nanjing
sùshè		pingfängmi	
宿舍	dormitory	平方米	square metre
xīblan		fànguăn	
西边	west	饭馆	restaurant
dìtiězhàn	subway	xiānsheng	
地铁站	station	先生	Mr
běibian			
北边	north		

# 

用结湖附近

的松潘家园

比工大附近

石佛雲附近 姚家园附近

双井家乐社

海淀区

海淀

上展:

一好

gōngyù chūzū 公寓 出租

Dàxué Lù shíbā hào èr lóu yǒu sān gè fángjiān 大学路 18 号 2 楼 ,有三个房间。 Fángzi lí dàxué hěn jìn Fángzi de dōngbian 房子离大学很近。房子的东边 yǒu xuésheng sùshè xībian yǒu dìtiězhàn 一方字生宿舍,西边有地铁站,西边有地铁站, běibian yǒu chāoshì fùjìn yǒu diànyǐngyuán 北边有超市,附近有电影院。 Jiāotōng hé mǎi dōngxi dōu hěn fāngbiàn 交通和买东西都很方便。 diànhuà 每月¥4200 电话:25489076

Liánxirén Zhào xiǎojiě 联系人: 赵 小姐

## gōngyù chūzū 公寓 出租

Hěn piányi 很便宜!

Nánjīng Lù jiù shíbā hào bā lóu yībǎi èrshí píngfāngmǐ 南京路 98 号 8楼, 120 平方米。 南京路 98 号 8楼, 120 平方米。 Fùjìn yǒu hěnduō shūdiàn hé jiàqian piányi 附近有很多书店和价钱便宜 de fànguǎn dōngbian yǒu gōngyuán xībian 的饭馆,东边有公园,西边 yǒu gòuwù zhōngxīn 有购物中心。

měi yuè diànhuà 69812047 毎月¥3500 电话: 69812047

Liánxìrén Má xiānsheng 联系人: 马 先生





Work in pairs. Write notes about the two flats in Activity 2.

	gōngyù 公寓 1	gōngyù 公寓 2
fùjìn yǒu 附近有		
gòuwù 购物		
měi yuè 每月¥		

Now discuss which flat Mark should choose.

Match the sentences with the information in the box.

> jiāotōng gòuwù yùndòng a 交通 b 购物 c 运动

Fángzi de běibian yŏu chāoshì

- 1 房子的 北边 有 超市。 Fángzi lí dàxué hěn jìn
- 2 房子离大学 很 近。 Fángzi de xībian yǒu gōngyuán
- 3 房子的西边有 公园。 Fángzi de dōngblan yǒu shūdiàn
- 4 房子的 东边 有 书店。 Fángzi de nánbian yǒu dìtiězhàn
- 5 房子的 南边 有地铁站。
- Write an advertisement describing your flat or house. Use the advertisements in Activity 2 to help you.

wǒ jiā de dōngbian yǒu 我家的 东边 有……

## Language in use

Expressing existence using



1 Look at the sentences.

Subject		100	Predicate		
Attribute	Location	Verb	Verb Object / Noun phrase		
Xuéxiào 学校	fùjìn 附近	yǒu yī gè gōngyuán 有 一个 公园。			
There is a park near the school.					
Yóujú de 邮局的	xībian 西边	mélyǒu dìtiězhàn 没有 地铁站。			
There isn't a subway station to the west of the post office.					
wǒ jiā 我家	fùjìn 附近	yǒu chāoshì 有 超市。			
There is a supermarket near my home.					

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 有 means "there is/are".
- The noun before 有 can only refer to people.
- □ 3 没有 means "there isn't/aren't".
- Write the sentences in Chinese.
  - 1 There is a bank near my home.
  - 2 There is a supermarket to the north of the subway station.
  - 3 There isn't a post office behind the cinema.
    - Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.



## Asking questions using

#### yǒu méiyǒu 有没有

#### Look at the conversations.

Fùjìn yǒu shūdiàn ma

- A: 附近有 书店 吗?
  - Yŏu
- B: 有。
- Fùjìn yŏu méiyŏu gōngyuán
- A: 附近有 没有 公园?
- Yǒu B: 有。
- Qiánbian yǒu méiyǒu yínháng
- A: 前边 有 没有 银行?
  - Méiyŏu
- B:没有。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 有没有 is an alternative expression of 有······吗.
- □ 2 有没有 means "is there" or "isn't there" in questions.
- □ 3 有没有 can be used in statements.

### Rewrite the questions using 有没有.

Qiánbian yǒu dìtiězhàn ma

- 1 前边 有地铁站吗?
  - Chāoshì hòubian yŏu xǐshŏujiān ma
- 2 超市 后边 有 洗手间 吗?
- Nǐ jĩā fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma
- 3 你家附近有 银行吗?
- Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

Expressing locations with the verb

zài 在

#### 1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Verb	Noun phrase
Ditiězhàn	zài	shūdiàn döngbian
地铁站	在	书店 东边。
Τā	zài	xuéxiào
他	在	学校。
Wáng Yù	zài	göngyuán
王玉	在	公园。

## Now check the sentences in which 在 is used as a verb.

Wŏ bàba zài yīyuàn gōngzuò

- 1 □ a 我爸爸在医院 工作。 Yóujú zài yīyuàn hòubian
  - □ b 邮局在医院后边。 Xǐshǒujiān zài shūdiàn dōngbian
- 2 □ a 洗手间 在 书店 东边。 Mǎkè zài Wáng Yù jiā chifàn
  - □ b 马克在 王玉家吃饭。

#### 2 Look at the sentences.

Yóujú de běibian yǒu yī gè gōngyuán 邮局的 北边 有一个 公园。 Gōngyuán zàl yóujú běibian 公园 在邮局北边。

### Now rewrite the sentences using $\stackrel{.}{ au}$ .

Yínháng de hòubian yŏu yī gè chāoshì

- 1 银行的 后边有一个超市。
- Yóujú fùjìn yǒu yī gè diànyǐngyuàn 2 邮局附近有一个 电影院。
- Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

## LESSON | 3

### **Communication activity**

- Work in pairs. Prepare a proposal for funding to design a new town centre for a developing region in western China. Think about:
  - locations of the bank, post office, bus station, subway station, supermarket, park, etc.
  - · distance between these places
  - places to the north/south/east/west and how they connect to the town centre
- Prepare questions to ask other pairs about their plans.

Běibian Nánbian Dōngbian Xībian yǒu shénme 北边/南边/东边/西边有什么? Dìtiězhàn lí chāoshì yuǎn bù yuǎn 地铁站 离 超市 远 不 远 ? Yǒu mélyǒu gōngyuán 有 没有 公园? Yínháng zài nǎli Zěnme qù 银行 在 哪里?怎么 去?

Present your plan to the class. Answer questions from your classmates, and vote for the best plan.

#### **Cultural Corner**

## How far is really far?

Just as in the West, Chinese people often prefer to gauge distance in terms of how long it takes to get somewhere, rather than describing it in terms of metres, kilometres or miles. If you were to ask "How far is it from Beijing to Shanghai?" in China, people would generally not answer "About 1000 kilometres". Instead, they would say, "Two hours by plane" or "About ten hours by train". Because long-distance train journeys are very common in China, more than in most other countries, describing distance in terms of hours spent on the train is widely and easily understood.

Turn to pages 154 and 160 for more speaking practice.

## **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
木	tree	楼、机
7	step	往、行

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

## 样很林德

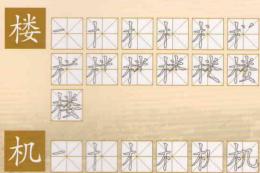
Match the words with the meanings.

- lóu 1 楼 shŏujī
- a bank
- 2 手机 yinháng
- b towards
- 3 银行
- building

wång 往

d mobile phone

Trace the characters in the boxes.



### Review and practice

Circle the odd word out.

1	dōngbian	xībian	běibían	zhèli
	东边	西边	北边	这里
2	ch <b>āo</b> shì	fùjìn	gōngyuán	yínháng
	超市	附近	公园	银行

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

yǒu yínháng méiyǒu fùjìn

- 1 有 / 银行 / 没有 / 附近 /? nánbian ditiézhàn göngyuán yī gè yǒu de
- 2 南边 / 地铁站 / 公园 / 一个 / 有/的/。 de yóujú yínháng běibian zài
- 3 的/邮局/银行/北边/在/。 chāoshì méiyǒu qīánblan
- 4 超市 / 没有 / 前边 /。

Match the questions with the answers.

Chāoshì lí yīyuàn yuǎn ma

- 1 超市 离 医院 远 吗? Yóujú zài năli
- 2 邮局在哪里? Dàxué fùjìn yǒu shūdiàn ma
- 3 大学附近有书店吗? zhèli de jiāotōng fāngbiản ma
- 4 这里的 交通 方便 吗?

Yǒu zài qiánbian

- a 有、在 前边。 Fùiìn yǒu dìtiězhàn hěn fāngbiàn
- b 附近 有 地铁站, 很 方便。 Bù yuăn
- c不远。 Yóujú zài shūdiàn de běibian
- d 邮局在 书店 的北边。

4 Write sentences with 在 and 有 / 没有 using the words in the boxes.

shūdiàn yóujú 书店 邮局 göngyuán chāoshì 公园 超市 dìtiězhàn yínháng 地铁站 银行

döngbian xībian 西边 东边 nánbian běibian 南边 北边 giánbian hòubian 前边 后边

Wǒ jiā de dōngbian yǒu yī gè chāoshì 我家的 东边 有一个 超市。 Chāoshì zài wǒ jiā de dōngbian 超市在我家的东边。

## Vocabulary extension

Draw a map of your neighbourhood. Use the places you have learnt in this unit and the places below.

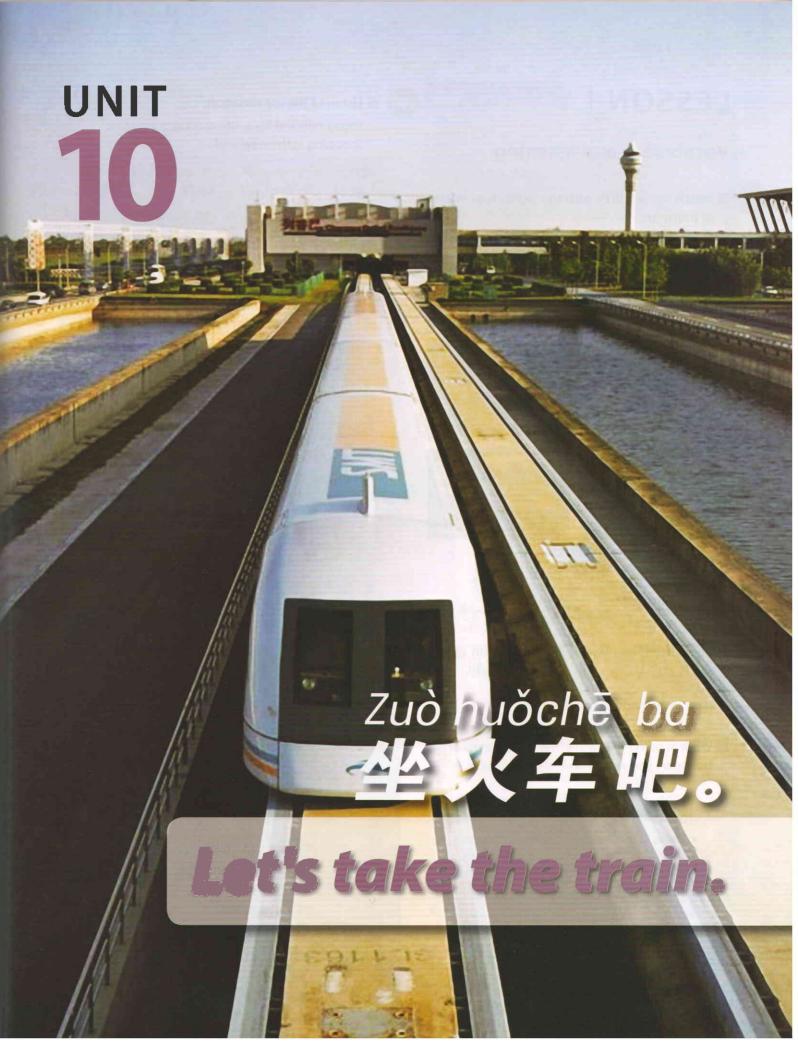
shāngdiàr 商店 kāfēidiàn 咖啡店	shop	jǐngchájú 警察局 lǚguǎn 旅馆	police station
yàodiàn 药店	pharmacy	jiànshēnfáng 健身房	gymnasium

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your maps.

A:			iu méiyǒu す 没有		_?
В:	Méiyǒu 没有。	Yǒu /有,	zài 在	o	

## **Vocabulary list**

楼 lóu n. building, storey 宿舍 sùshè n.	dormitory
怎么 zěnme pron. how 西边 xībian n.	west
走 zǒu v. walk, go 地铁站 dìtiězhàn n.	subway station
路人 lùrén n. passerby 北边 běibian n.	north
邮局 yóujú n. post office 交通 jiāotōng n.	transportation
后边 hòubian n. back 方便 fāngbiàn adj.	convenient
往 wǎng prep. towards 联系 liánxì v./n.	contact
南边 nánbian n. south 南京 Nánjīng n.	Nanjing
离 lí v. away from 平方米 píngfāngmǐ measu word	e square metre
这儿 zhèr pron. here 饭馆 fànguǎn n.	restaurant
对 duì adj. right, correct 先生 xiānsheng n.	Mr.
银行 yínháng n. bank 洗手间 xǐshǒujiān n.	toilet, washroom
附近 fùjìn n./adj. vicinity, nearby 高度 shāngdiàn n.	shop
前边 qiánbian n. front 咖啡店 kāfēidiàn n.	café
分钟 fēnzhōng n. minute 药店 yàodiàn n.	pharmacy
左右 zuǒyòu n. about 警察局 jǐngchájú n.	police station
出租 chūzū V. rent out, lease 旅馆 lǔquǎn n.	hotel
房子 fángzi n. flat, house 健身房 jiànshēnfáng n.	gymnasium
近 jìn adj. near	



## LESSON | 1

### **Vocabulary and listening**



Match the pictures with the words for means of transport.













zuò gōnggòng qìchē 1 坐 公共 汽车

qí zìxíngchē

2 骑自行车 zuò chūzūchē 3 坐 出租车 zuò ditiĕ

4 坐地铁 zuò huǒchē

5 坐 火车 zuò fēljī

6 坐飞机

Now listen and say the words.

Work in pairs. Tell each other what means of transport you would take to these places.

Běijīng 1 北京

xuéxiào 2 学校 péngyou de jiā

3 朋友的家

gòuwù zhōngxīn 4 购物 中心



**B** Listen to the conversation.

Yeong-min and Steve are making plans to go shopping at the weekend.

Yǒngmín Shǐdìfū nǐ de tīxù zài nǎli 永民: 史蒂夫, 你的下恤在哪里

mǎi de Bù tài hǎokàn 买的? 不太好看!

Shǐdìfū Shì ma Zhè shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan da 史蒂夫: 是吗? 这是我最喜欢的

tīxù wǒ hěn xǐhuan tā de yánsè T恤,我很喜欢它的颜色。

Yǒngmín Nǐ xūyào yīxlē xīn yīfu 永民: 你需要一些新衣服。

> Women yīqǐ qù gòuwù zhōngxīn 我们一起去购物中心

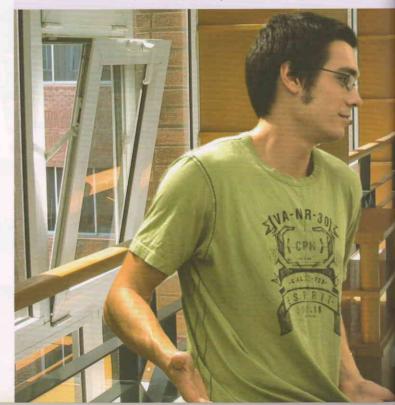
mǎi ba 买吧。

shǐdifū shì bù shì zài sānlǐtún 史蒂夫:是不是在三里屯?

Yǒngmín Shì 永民:是。

shǐdifū zěnme qù zuò gōnggòng qìchē 史蒂夫: 怎么去? 坐 公共 汽车

háishi zuò chūzūchē 还是坐出租车?



Yǒngmín Zuò dìtlě ba dìtiě fāngbiàn yīdiǎnr 永民: 坐地铁吧,地铁方便一点儿。

Shǐdìfū Hǎo 史蒂夫: 好。

Yǒngmín Xīngqīliù hálshl Xīngqītiān qù 永民: 星期六 还是 星期天 去?

shǐdìfū Xīngqīliù ba 史蒂夫: 星期六吧。

Yǒngmín Hǎo Ránhòu wǒmen qù chī wǎnfàn 永民:好。然后我们去吃晚饭,

> hǎo ma 好吗?

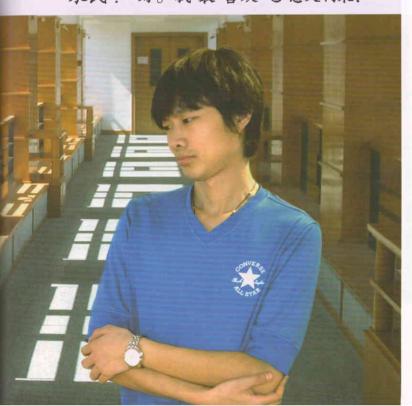
Shǐdìfū Dāngrán hào Nàli yǒu shénme fànguǎn 史蒂夫: 当然好! 那里有 什么 饭馆?

Yǒngmín Nàli yǒu Yìdàlì cāntīng yĕ yǒu 永民: 那里有意大利餐厅,也有

> Rìběn cāntīng 日本餐厅。

Shǐdìfū Wǒmen chī Yidàlìcài ba 史蒂夫: 我们吃意大利菜吧。

Yǒngmín Hảo Wǒ zuì xǐhuan chī Yìdàlìcàl 永民: 好。我最喜欢吃意大利菜!



生词 Ne	ew words		
tā 它	it	háishí 还是	or (in a question)
yánsè 颜色	colour	chūzūchē 出租车	taxi
xūyào 需要	need	ránhòu 然后	then
yīxiē 一些	some	dāngrán 当然	of course
Sānlǐtún 三里屯	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	Yìdàlì 意大利	Italy
zuò 坐	take (a	cāntīng 餐厅	restaurant
gönggòng	vehicle) qìchē		
公共	汽车 bus		



#### 4 Listen again and answer the questions.

Shǐdìfū de tīxù hǎokàn ma

1 史蒂夫的 T恤 好看 吗?

Xîngqīliù Yŏngmín hé Shǐdìfū qù năli

- 2 星期六 永民 和史蒂夫去哪里? Tāmen qù mǎi shénme
- 3 他们去买什么? Tāmen zěnme qù
- 4 他们怎么去? Yǒngmín zuì xǐhuan chī shénme
- 5 永民 最喜欢吃 什么?
- Complete Steve's notes about the shopping trip.

Hé Yǒngmín yīqǐ gòuwù 和 永民 一起 购物
dìfang 地方(place):
shíjlān 时间:
jiāotōng 交通:
wǎnfàn 晚饭:

Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3 using different places and means of transport.

## **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### Difference between "q" and "ch"



#### Say the words aloud.

	q	ch	
qī	qù	chī	chē
七	去	吃	车
qǐng	qún	chàng	chū
请	裙	口昌	出

#### Now listen and repeat.



#### Say the tongue twister.

Chuẩn le qúnzi zuò chữzữchē qù chĩ qĩngcài 穿了裙子坐出租车去吃青菜!

#### Now listen and repeat.

#### **B** Write answers to the questions.

Nǐ qù nǎli 1 你去哪里?

Nǐ zuò shénme chē qù

2 你坐 什么 车去?

#### Now work in pairs and say the conversations.



#### 4 Listen and say the words.

zài	zuò	zuì
1 在	坐	最
zěnme	háishi	dāngrán
2 怎么	还是	当然
chūzūchē	ditiě	gōnggòng qìchē
3 出租车	地铁	公共 汽车

## Work in pairs. You are going shopping downtown. Choose the best way to get there.

A:	Wŏmen 我们	qù háishi 去还是	<b>qù</b> 去?
B:	Wőmen 我们	qù 去。	
A:	Wŏmen 我们	qù hǎo ma 去,好吗?	
B:	Hắo ba Bù 好吧。/不,	wŏmen 我们	qù 去。

## **6** Work in groups. Find out how your group members go to various places and complete the table.

Nĭ zěnme qù xuéxiào

A: 你 怎么 去 学校?

Wǒ zuò gōnggòng qìchẽ qù

B: 我坐 公共 汽车去。

Nǐ zuò gōnggòng qìchē háishi zuò dìtlě

A: 你坐 公共 汽车 还是 坐 地铁 qù shàngbān + 上班 2

去 上班?

Wŏ zuò dìtiĕ qù

B: 我 坐 地铁 去。

	Student 1	Student 2	Student 3
xuéxlào 学校			
gőngzuò 工作			
yīyuàn 医院			
chāoshì 超市			

### CHINESE TO GO



Saying goodbye to people going on a journey

Yīlù-shùnfēng 一路顺风!

Have a good trip!

Zhùyì ānquán 注意 安全!

Safety first!

Zhù nǐ yīlù-píng'ān 祝你一路平安。

Have a safe trip.

### Reading and writing

#### Check the activities you like to do during the holidays.



zuò chuán yóulán 坐 船 游览



páshān 爬山



lůxing 旅行



pāizhào 拍照



Read Anna and Wang Yu's plan for a trip.

lüxing shijian shŭjià jiàqī de dì-yī 旅行时间:暑假(假期的第一

> gè xīngqī 个星期)

zěnme qù zuò huŏchē fāngbiàn piányi 怎么去:坐火车(方便、便宜)

yào gǐng de **rén Shǐdìfū hé Mǎkè** 要请的人: 史蒂夫和马克

qù nǎli Guìlín 去哪里:桂林 zěnme qù zuò h 怎么去:坐; yào qǐng de rén 要请的人: zuò shénme zuò cl 做什么:坐 páshā 爬山 zuò shénme zuò chuán yóulán gòuwù 做什么:坐船游览、购物、

páshān pāizhào cānguān 爬山、拍照、参观

yŏumíng de jĭngdiǎn 有名的景点

#### Now answer the questions.

Annà hé Wáng Yù qù năli lăxing

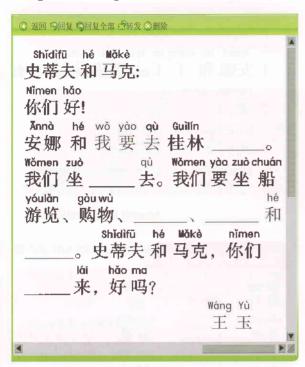
- 1 安娜和 王玉去哪里旅行? Tāmen zĕnme qù
- 2 她们怎么去? Tāmen gēn shéi yīqi qù
- 3 她们跟谁一起去? Tamen yào zuò yīxiē shénme huódòng
- 4 她们要做一些什么活动?

#### 生词 New words

lǚxíng 旅行	travel	chuán 船	boat
shǔjià 暑假	summer holiday	yóulán 游览	go sightseeing
gjiàqī 假期	holiday	páshān 爬山	climb a mountain
dì-yī gè 第一个	the first	pāizhào 拍照	take photos
Guilín 桂林	Guilin	cānguān 参观	visit (a place)
huǒchē 火车	train	jǐngdiǎn 景点	scenic site



Somplete Wang Yu's email to Steve and Mark.
Wang Yu is inviting Steve and Mark on the trip.



Write the means of transport Anna and Wang Yu should take from their hotel in Guilin to do the following activities.



páshān bāshí gōnglǐ 1 爬山 80 公里 (km) zuò chuán yóulán shiliù gōngli 2 坐 船 游览 16 公里 qù gòuwù zhōngxīn yī gönglǐ 3 去购物 中心 1 公里 qù yŏumíng de fànguăn wǔ gōnglǐ 5 公里 4 去 有名 的 饭馆

### Language in use

Alternative questions with

háishi **还是** 

Look at the conversations.

Nǐ jiào shǐdifū háishi Mǎkè
A:你叫史蒂夫还是马克?
Wǒ jiào shǐdifū
B:我叫史蒂夫。

Tā shì nǐ jiějie háishi nǐ mèimei
A:她是你姐姐还是你妹妹?
Wǒ mèimei
B:我妹妹。

Wǒmen zuò chūzūchē háishi dìtiě
A:我们坐出租车还是地铁?

Zuò dìtiě ba
B:坐地铁吧。

Now check the two	correct explanations.
□ 1 还是 is used t	o join two alternatives in questions.
□ 2 还是 means '	and".
_	me verb is used before and after ond verb can be left out.
Complete the sente in brackets.	ences using 还是 and the phrases
Nǐ shì 1 你是	Zhōngguórén Rìběnrén _ (中国人 /日本人)?
Tā zuò 2 她坐	gōnggòng qìchē dìtiě _( 公共 汽车/地铁)?
Wŏmen 3 我们	kàn diànyǐng tīng yīnyuè _(看 电影 / 听音乐)?
Jīntiān shì 4 今天 是	wǔ hào liù hào (五号/六号)?

Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

#### Questions ending with



#### Look at the conversation.

Women qù gòuwù hảo ma

A: 我们去购物,好吗?

Hảo qù năli

B: 好, 去哪里?

Women aù Sānlitún hảo ma

A: 我们 去三里屯, 好吗? Hảo

B: 好。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 好吗 can be used at the end of a sentence to make a suggestion.
- □ 2 好吗 can be used at the end of a sentence to ask for an opinion.
- □ 3 We use 好吗 to respond to suggestions.
- Check the sentences that can have 好吗 added at the end to make questions.

Jiǔ hào shì wǒ bàba de shēngrì

- □ 1 九 号 是 我 爸爸 的 生日。 Women Xīngqīliù qù
- □ 2 我们 星期六 去。 Wŏmen zuò dìtiě
- □ 3 我们 坐 地铁。

#### **Expressing superlatives with**



#### Look at the phrases.

zuì xihuan

zuì hǎo

最喜欢 like the most 最好 the best

zuì piàoliang

最 漂亮 the most beautiful

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 3 最 can be used both before and after the verb or adjective.

#### Write a sentence about yourself using \( \opi \).

Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

#### Using the particle



#### Look at the sentences.

Women zuò huǒchē qù ba

我们坐火车去吧。Let's take the train.

Zǒu ba

走吧。

Let's go.

Shǐdìfii nǐ lái ba 史蒂夫, 你来吧。

Steve, you come.

Nǐmen zuò fēijī lái ba 你们坐飞机来吧。

You could come here by air.

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 P. can be used to indicate commands or suggestions.
- ☐ 2 □ is used to ask for opinions.
- ☐ 3 IPL is used at the end of a sentence.
- Complete the conversations using IPL and the words in brackets.

Women zěnme qù gouwù zhongxin

1 A: 我们 怎么 去 购物 中心?

gönggòng qìchē 。(公共汽车)

Women jidian qù chaoshì

2 A: 我们 几点 去 超市?

B: 。 ( 现在 )

yīqĭ yínháng 3 A: 。 (一起,银行)

Đuìbugǐ wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān nǐ gù ba B: 对不起、我 没有 时间, 你 去 吧。

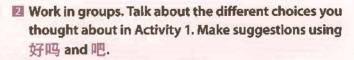
Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

## **Communication activity**

#### Work alone.

You work as a volunteer on a project called "Experiencing China". The project organizes trips for students in your local area. Choose one of the four places below and plan a trip. Include:

- · the dates for the trip
- one place to go
- the activities for the tour



Shǔjià qù Zhōngguó hǎo ma A:暑假 夫 中国、好 吗?

Hảo qù năli

B: 好,去 哪里? Qù Shànghǎi hǎo ma

A: 去上海, 好吗?

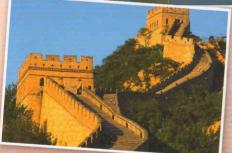
Háishi qù Guìlín ba Nàll yǒu hěn duō jǐngdiǎn

- B: 还是去桂林吧。那里有很多景点。
- Tell the class about your plan for the trip.
- Turn to pages 154 and 160 for more speaking practice.



Shànghǎi 上海





Guilín 桂林

Běijīng 北京





#### **Cultural Corner**

## China—a kingdom of bicycles

China is known to many as the "kingdom of bicycles". With its 10 million bicycles, Beijing has the largest number of bicycles of any city in the world. In a city with over 13 million people, 2.4 million can be found riding their bicycles to work every day. During rush hour, the roads teem with thousands of bikes, and car drivers need to be skilful at navigating their way through the congested roads.

For many Chinese people, especially those living in rural areas, bicycles are their main means of transport. This contrasts with Western countries where bike riding is often a form of physical exercise rather than a vital or sole means of transport.

In cities all over China, parking areas for bicycles can be seen everywhere on the streets. And as times change, electric bikes are becoming more popular too.

## **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
又	again	观、对
仓	eat	饭、馆

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

## 发饮友饥

Match the words with the meanings.

	xǐhuan		
1	喜欢	a	restaurant
	duì		
2	对	b	like
	cānguān		
3	参观	c	right, correct
	fànguǎn		
4	饭馆	d	visit

**I** Trace the characters in the boxes.



## **Review and practice**

	M	latch the wo	ords with th	e mean	ings.	
	1	páshān 爬山 yīgĭ		a tog	gether	
	2	一起		b ch	еар	
	3	lǚxíng 旅行		e clii	mb a mour	ntain
	4	piányi 便宜		d tra	vel	
2	C	omplete the	sentences v	with the	words from	n Activity
	1	Zuótiān wǒ 昨天 我	hé péngyou 和 朋友	'	qù yóu 去 游	yǒng 泳。
	2	Zhè jiàn yīt 这件衣				0
	3	Mingtiān wǒi 明天 我		<u> </u>	hǎo ma 好吗?	
	4	Nǐ qù Běijī 你去北京	~	ma 吗?		
1	CI	hoose the be	est sentence	to com	plete the c	onversati
		Wáng Yù				

ons.

Choose the best sentence to complete the co
Wáng Yù 1 王 玉:  Mǎkè Hǎo  马克: 好。  Wǒmen bā diǎn qù hǎo ma a 我们八点去,好吗?  Wǒmen bā diǎn qù háishi jiǔ diǎn qù b 我们八点去 去?
Wáng Yù 2 王 玉:  Mǎkè Wǒ dìdi 马克: 我弟弟。  Tā shì nǐ dìdi ma a他是你弟弟吗?  Tō shì nǐ gēge háishi nǐ dìdi b他是你哥哥还是你弟弟?
Wáng Yù Wǒmen qù nǎli chīfàn 3 王 玉: 我们去哪里吃饭? Mǎkè 马克: Wǒmen qù Zhōngcānguǎn ba 我们去中餐馆吧。 Wǒmen qù chīfàn ba b 我们去吃饭吧。

## Vocabulary extension

#### Look at the words in the box.

jiōyóuzhàn tíngchēchǎng 加油站 petrol station 停车场 car park
huǒchēzhàn fēljīchǎng
火车站 railway station 飞机场 airport

Now write the words under the appropriate signs.









## **Vocabulary list**

它	tā	pron.	it :	第一个	dì-yĩ gè		the first
颜色	yánsè	n.	colour	桂林	Guìlín	n.	Guilin
需要	хūуàо	V.	need	火车	huŏchē	n.	train
一些	yīxiē	quantifier	some	船	chuán	n.	boat
三里屯	Sänlǐtún	n.	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	游览	yóulán	V.	go sightseeing
坐	zuò	v.	take (a vehicle)	爬山	páshān	V.	climb a mountain
公共汽车	gönggòng qìchē	п.	bus	拍照	pāizhào	V.	take photos
还是	háishi	conj.	or (in a question)	参观	cānguān	V.	visit (a place)
出租车	chūzūchē	n.	taxi	景点	jĭngdiăn	n.	scenic site
然后	ránhòu	сопј.	then	骑	qí	V.	ride (bicycle, etc)
当然	dāngrán	adv.	of course	自行车	zìxíngchē	n.	bicycle
意大利	Yìdàlì	n.	Italy	飞机	fēijī	n.	aeroplane
餐厅	canting	П.	restaurant	加油站	jiāyóuzhàn	n.	petrol station
旅行	lŭxing	v./n.	travel	火车站	huŏchēzhàn	n.	railway station
暑假	shŭjlà	n.	summer holiay	停车场	tíngchēchăng	n.	car park
假期	jiàqī	n.	holiday	飞机场	fēijīchăng	n.	airport

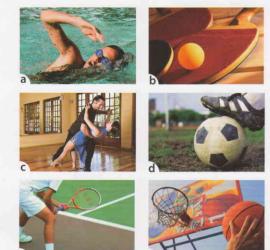


## Vocabulary and listening



#### Match the names of sports with the pictures.

pīngpāngqiú	yóuyǒng	wǎngqiú
1 乒乓球	3 游泳	5 网球
lánqiú	tiàowǔ	zúqiú
2 篮球	4 跳舞	6 足球



Now listen and number the sports in the order you hear them.

## 生词 New words

zúqiú 足球	football	xīwàng 希望	hope
xiàge 下个	next	ying 嬴	win
xiǎng 想	think, want	wǎngqiú 网球	tennis
bǐsài 比赛	match, competition	huì 会	can, be able to
qiú 球	ball, ball game	tiàowǔ 跳舞	dance
duì 队	team	guo 过	indicator of past actions
Yīnggélán 英格兰	England	yóuyǒng 游泳	swim
tǐyùchǎng 体育场	stadium, sports ground		





#### Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Wang Yu are planning to do some exercise at the weekend.

shǐdìfū	Wáng Yù nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng
史蒂夫:	王 玉, 你喜欢什么运动?
Wáng Yù	Wǒ xǐhuan lánqiú yě xǐhuan zúqiú
王玉:	我喜欢篮球,也喜欢足球。
Shǐdìfū	Xiàge yuè nǐ xiǎng qù kàn zúqlú bǐsài
史蒂夫:	下个月你想去看足球比赛
	ma et e

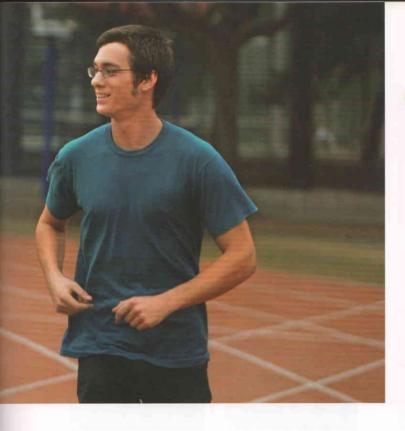
吗? Wáng Yù Dāngrán xiǎng Shénme giúduì bisài 王玉: 当然 想! 什么 球队 比赛? Zhōngguóduì hé Yīnggélán duì Shǐdìfū 史蒂夫: 中国队 和 英格兰队, 在 women dàxué fùjìn de tǐyùchẳng 我们大学附近的体育场。

Hào wò gên nĩ qù kàn Wò xīwàng Wáng Yù 好,我跟你去看。我希望 王玉: Zhōngguóduì yíng

中国队 赢!

Wǒ xīwàng Yīnggélán duì yíng Shǐdìfū 史蒂夫: 我 希望 英格兰队 赢!

Wáng Yù Zhège zhōumò nǐ xiǎng qù yùndòng ma 这个周末你想去运动吗? 王玉:



Shǐdìfū Shénme yùndòng 史蒂夫· 什么 运动?

Wáng Yù Wǒmen qù dǎ wǎngqlú hǎo ma 王玉: 我们去打网球,好吗? Shǐdìfū Duìbuqǐ wǒ bù huì dǎ wǎngqiú

史蒂夫: 对不起,我不会打 网球,

dànshì wǒ huì tiàowǔ wǒmen 但是我会跳舞,我们

yīqǐ qù tiàowǔ ba 一起去跳舞吧。

Wáng Yù Wǒ bù xǐhuan tiàowǔ yě méi xuéguo エエ 北て吉砂県無 小江岸社

王玉: 我不喜欢跳舞,也没学过。 Shǐdìfū Wǒmen qù yóuyǒng zěnmeyàng

shǐdìfū Wǒmen qù yóuyǒng zěnmeyàng 史蒂夫: 我们去游泳 怎么样?

Wáng Yù Hảo Wổ zuì xǐhuan yóuyǒng 工工、好! 我是喜欢 滋汤

王玉: 好! 我最喜欢游泳。

Shǐdìfū Wǒmen míngtiān zǎoshang qù kěyǐ ma 史蒂夫: 我们 明天 早上 去,可以吗?

Wáng Yù Wố zǎoshang yào pǎobù xiàwǔ qù ba

王玉: 我早上要跑步,下午去吧。

shǐdìfū Hǎo míngtlān jiàn 史蒂夫: 好, 明天 见。 2-39

Listen again and check the true statements.

Wáng Yù xǐhuan dà lángiú

□ 1 王玉喜欢打篮球。

Zhège yuè tǐyùchǎng yǒu zúqlú □ 2 这个月 体育场有足球

> bǐsài 比赛。

Wáng Yù kěyǐ gēn Shǐdìfū qù kàn
□ 3 王玉可以跟史蒂夫去看

zúqiú bǐsài 足球比赛。

Shǐdìfū bù huì dà wăngqiú

□ 4 史蒂夫不会打 网球。

Wáng Yù xihuan tiàowǔ

□ 5 王玉喜欢跳舞。

Tāmen míngtiān xiàwǔ qù yóuyŏng

□ 6 他们 明天 下午去 游泳。

Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 2 using different sports.



Listen and complete the table with the names of sports.

(T. 1-1-)	xǐhuan 喜欢	bù xǐhuơn 不喜欢
Măkè 马克		the R
Yǒngmín 永民		
Ānnà 安娜		

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the facts in the table.

Mǎkè xǐhuan shénme yùndòng A:马克喜欢 什么 运动?

Tā xǐhuan

B:他 喜欢……。

Mǎkè bù xǐhuan shénme yùndòng

A: 马克不 喜欢 什么 运动?

Tā bù xǐhuan B:他不喜欢·····。

## Pronunciation and speaking

#### Difference between "zh" and "ch"



### Say the words aloud.

zh	zhè	zhù	zhāng
	这	住	张
ch	chē	chū	cháng
	车	出	长

#### Now listen and repeat.



#### Listen and check the words you hear.

zhĭ	chī
1 □ a 只	□b吃
zhēn	chén
2 □ a 真	□ b 陈
zhào	chāo
3 □ a 赵	□ b 超

Now listen again and say the words.



#### Listen and say the words.

pǎobù	tiàowǔ	yóuyŏng
1 跑步	跳舞	游泳
yùndòng	bǐsài	qiúduì
2 运动	比赛	球队
xiǎng	huì	xīwàng
3 想	会	希望

#### Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions using the words in brackets.

Wǒ jiějie xǐhuan chī Yìdàlì cài
1 A: 我 姐姐 喜欢 吃 意大利菜。
wŏ gēge yĕ
B:(我哥哥,也)
Qingwèn fùjîn yǒu mélyǒu chāoshì
2 A: 请问 附近有 没有 超市?
yŏu
B:(有)
Zhào lăoshī huì zuò huŏchē qù ma
3 A: 赵 老师会坐 火车去吗?
huì

B: \_\_\_\_\_ (会)
Zhège zhōumò nǐ mǎile shénme
4 A: 这个 周末你买了什么?
yī tiáo cháng qúnzi
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (一条 长 裙子)

Work in pairs. Talk about whether you can play and if you like playing the sports below.

pingpāngqiú	lánqiú
乒乓球	篮球
tiàowů	yóuyŏng
跳舞	游泳

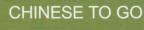
Nǐ huì ma A:你会 ····· 吗?

Wǒ huì Wǒ bù huì B:我会。/我不会。

Nǐ xǐhuan ma A:你喜欢 ····· 吗?

Wǒ xǐhuan Wǒ bù xǐhuan B: 我喜欢······。/我不喜欢······。

Work with another pair. Tell them if your partner in Activity 5 can play and likes playing the different sports.





#### Encouraging people

Jiāyóu
加油! Come on!

Bié fàngqì
别放弃! Don't give up!
Nǐ néng xíng
你能行! You can do it!
Jiānchí jiù shì shènglì
坚持就是胜利!
Perseverance leads to success.

### Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Discuss which of these sports you have tried.



bèngji 蹦极



huáxuě 滑雪



chōnglàng 冲浪



giánshuí 潜水



Read Mark's questionnaire and answer the questions.

Mǎkè huì shénme yùndòng

1 马克会 什么 运动?

Măkè měi xīngqī zuò duōshao gè xiǎoshí yùndòng

- 2 马克每星期做 多少 个小时 运动? Tā hé shéi yīqi zuò yùndòng
- 3他和谁一起做运动? Tā zài năli zuò yùndòng
- 4 他在哪里做运动?

### 生词 New words

xiūxián 休闲	leisure	huáxuě 滑雪	ski
wènjuàn 问卷	questionnaire	qiánshuǐ 潜水	dive
xìngbié 性别	gender	bèngjí 蹦极	bungee jump
nán 男	male	qítā 其他	others,
tī 踢	play (with feet), kick	xiǎoshí 小时	hour
pîngpāngqiú 乒乓球	table tennis	shíhou 时候	time
chōnglàng	surf		

#### xué sheng yùndòng hé xiūxián wènjuàn 学生 运剂 问券

xingming Măkè 姓名:马克 xìngbié nán 性别: 男

niánling shíjiú suì 年龄:19 岁

Àodàlìvà guójí 国籍:澳大利亚

#### Ní huì shénme yùndòng 你会什么运动?

M	chōnglàng 冲浪	abla
Ø	huáxuě 滑雪	
Ø	qiánshuǐ 潜水	
	bèngjí 蹦极	
	M	□ 冲浪 huáxuě □ 滑雪 qiánshuǐ □ 潜水 bèngjí

Nǐ měi xīnggī zuò duōshao gè xiǎoshí yùndòng 你每星期做多少个小时运动?

□ 0 □ 1-2 □ 3-4 ☑ 5-10

Nǐ shénme shíhou zuò yùndòng 你 什 么 时候 做 运动? Měitiān xiàwů wů diǎn 每天下午五点。

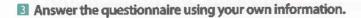
Nǐ hé shéi yīqǐ zuò yùndòng 你和谁一起做运动? Hé péngyou yīqǐ zuò 和朋友一起做。

Nǐ zài năli zuò yùndòng 你在哪里做 运动?

□ 家里 □ 学校

xuéxiào

tiyùchẳng ™体育场



Write a blog post about your favourite sports and recreational activities.



### Language in use

Using modal verbs

kěyǐ huì 可以 / 会

Look at the sentences.

100	Predicate			
Subject	Modal verb	Adverbial	Verb	Object
Wŏ	kěyǐ		shuō	Yīngyǔ
我	可以		说	英语。
Mǎkè	kěyǐ	gēn nǐ	qù	
马克	可以	跟你	去。	
Nǐ	kěyǐ	yîqǐ	qù	
你	可以	一起	去。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 可以 can be used to talk about ability and possibility.
- ☐ 2 可以 can be used to talk about permission.
- □ 3 可以 can be used to talk about obligation.
- 2 Look at the sentences.

Tā huì yóuyǒng ma 她会游泳吗?

Does she know how to swim?

Tā huì tiàowů

他会跳舞。

He knows how to dance.

Women huì chàng Zhongwéngē

我们会 唱 中文歌。

We can sing Chinese songs.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- ☐ 1 会 means an ability to do something.
- ☐ 2 会 is used to ask for permission.
- $\square$  3  $\Leftrightarrow$  is usually followed by a verb.

1	Nǐ 你	qù tā de shēngrì pàiduì 去他的生日派对。	
2	Wŏ 我	chảng Zhōngwéngē 唱 中文歌。	
3	Tā 她	dǎ wǎngqiú 打 网球 。	
4	Nǐ 你	tiàowǔ ma 跳舞吗?	
5		tiáo qúnzi zhēn piányl nǐ 条 裙子 真 便宜,你	mǎi 买

Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

#### Pivotal sentences

#### Look at the sentences.

	Predicate				
Subject	Verb 1 (pivotal verb)	Object 1	Verb 2	Object 2	
Wǒ	xīwàng	Zhōngguóduì	yíng		
我	希望	中国队	赢。		
Shǐdifū	qǐng	Wáng Yù	chī	Zhōngcān	
史蒂夫	请	王 玉	吃	中餐。	
Mǎkè	qǐng	Annà	kàn	diànyǐng	
马克	请	安娜	看	电影。	

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 In a pivotal sentence, the object of the first verb functions as the subject of the second verb.
- 2 A pivotal verb must always come after another verb.
- 3 Pivotal sentences can be used to express an invitation or wish.

### Write a pivotal sentence using 请 or 希望.

Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

## Talking about past actions with



#### Look at the sentences.

Tā qùguo Yìdàlì 她去过意大利。 She has been to Italy. Tā xuéguo Zhōngwén 她学过中文。 She has studied Chinese. Wǒ chīguo Rìběncài 我吃过日本菜。 I have had Japanese food.

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 过 is always used with a verb.
- □ 2 过 is usually followed by a noun.
- □ 3 过 cannot be used in the past perfect tense.

#### 2 Look at the sentences.

Tā méi qùguo Yìdàlì 她 没 去过 意大利。 She has not been to Italy.

Tā méi xuéguo Zhōngwén 她 没 学过 中文。 She has never studied Chinese.

Wǒ méi chīguo Rìběncài 我 没 吃过 日本菜。 I have never had Japanese food.

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 没 means "not".
- □ 2 没 can be used before the subject.
- □ 3 没 should be placed after a noun or pronoun.

#### B Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- Guìlín qù tā guo 1 桂林/去/他/过/。
- diànyǐng guo kàn tā zhège 2 电影 / 过 / 看 / 她 / 这个 /。
- guo zuò hùshì tā méi 3 过/做/护士/她/没/。
- méi Yìdàlìcài guo tā chī
- 4 没/意大利菜/过/他/吃/。

### Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

### **Communication activity**

#### Work in groups.

You work for a local school which runs various afterschool and weekend classes. You are working with your colleagues on an advertisement to promote the classes. Plan the following:

bān

•班 (classes)

riai

hé shíjiān

- ·日期 (dates) 和 时间
- xuésheng nlánling
- · 学生 年龄 shàngkè didiǎn
- ・上课 地点 (class venue) xuéfèi
- · 学费 (fees)

Include the following information:

- · directions to the school
- · number of students in each class
- Design your advertisement.
- Present your advertisement to the class.

Now ask and answer questions about the advertisement. Use the prompts below to help you.

Qù xuéxiào zěnme zǒu 去 学校 怎么走?

Měi bān yǒu duōshao gè xuésheng 每班有多少个学生?

Turn to pages 155 and 161 for more speaking practice.

### **Cultural Corner**

## Dance: a popular pastime

If you go to a park early in the morning in any city in China, you'll probably see a lot of people dancing to music. Dancing, as a form of exercise and relaxation, has become an important part of everyday life for many people. Apart from traditional Chinese dances such as folk dancing and Yangge, Western dances such as ballroom dancing are also very popular. Men and women may dance as couples or in groups. Women, particularly older women, often dance together.

### **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
王	jade	班
も	metal	钟

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

## 理望钱铁

Match the words with the meanings.

1	jiàqian 价钱	a	football
2	xiànzài 现在	b	bank
	zúqlú 足球	c	now
4	yínháng 银行	d	price

Trace the characters in the boxes.



### **Review and practice**

Match the words with the meanings.

yóuyǒng

1 游泳 a jogging
lánqiú

2 篮球 b table tennis
pǎobù

3 跑步 c swimming
pīngpāngqiú

4 乒乓球 d tennis
wǎngqiú

5 网球 e basketball

Match the questions with the answers.

Nǐ jīntiān wănshang xiǎng kàn diànyǐng ma

1你今天晚上 想看电影吗? Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng

2你喜欢什么运动?

Qingwèn fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu tiyúchǎng

3 请问,附近有没有体育场?

Yǒu zài yínháng hòubian

a 有,在 银行 后边。 Wǒ xǐhuan dǎ lángiú

b我喜欢打篮球。

Duìbuqi jīntiān wănshang wŏ yào gōngzuò

c 对不起, 今天 晚上 我要 工作。

Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

duibuqǐyīqǐbǐsàipǎobùzěnmeyàng对不起一起比赛跑步怎么样

Mǎkè Wǒmen míngtiān zǎoshang yīqǐ qù 马克:我们 明天 早上 一起去\_\_\_\_\_\_, hǎoma 好吗?

Shǐdìfū míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yào gōngzuò 史蒂夫: 用天 早上 我要 工作。

Mǎkè Míngtiān xiàwǔ 马克:明天下午\_\_\_\_\_? Shǐdìfū Xiàwǔ wǒ yào qù kān zúqiú

史蒂夫: 下午我要去看足球\_\_\_\_\_

Mǎkè Wǒ kěyǐ qù ma 马克: 我可以 \_\_\_\_\_去吗? Shǐdìfū Kěyǐ

史蒂夫: 可以。

## Vocabulary extension

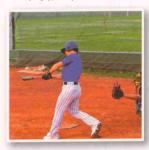
#### Look at the sports.



qūgùnqiú 曲棍球 hockey



páiqiú 排球 volleyball



bàngqiú 棒球 baseball



gǎnlǎnqiú 橄榄球 rugby

## Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other's favourite sports.

Nǐ xǐhuan dǎ bàngqiú ma A:你喜欢打棒球吗?

Nó bù xǐhuan dǎ bàngqiú wǒ xǐhuan B:我不喜欢打棒球,我喜欢……

## **Vocabulary list**

足球	zúqiú	n.	football
下个	xiàge		next
想	xiŏng	V.	think, want
比赛	bĭsài	n.	match, competition
球	qiú	П.	ball, ball game
队	duì	n.	team
英格兰	Yinggélán	n.	England
体育场	tĭyùchăng	n.	stadium, sports ground
希望	xīwàng	V.	hope
赢	yíng	V.	win
网球	wăngqiú	n.	tennis
会	huì	v.	can, be able to
跳舞	tiàowů	V.	dance
过	guo		indicator of past actions
游泳	yóuyŏng	V.	swim
休闲	xiūxián	n./v.	leisure, have leisure
问卷	wènjuàn	n.	questionnaire

性别	xìngbié	n.	gender
男	nán	n.	male
踢	tī	v.	play (with feet), kick
乒乓球	pîngpāngqiú	n.	table tennis
冲浪	chōnglàng	V.	surf
滑雪	huáxuě	V.	ski
潜水	qiánshuĭ	V.	dive
蹦极	bèngjí	V.	bungee jump
其他	qítā	pron.	others, other
其他 小时	qítā xiǎoshí	pron. n.	others, other hour
小时	xiǎoshí	п.	hour
小时时候	xiǎoshí shíhou	п. n.	hour time
小时 时候 曲棍球	xiǎoshí shíhou qūgùnqiú	п. n. n.	hour time hockey
小时候曲棍球棒球	xiǎoshí shíhou qūgùnqiú bàngqiú	п. п. п. п.	hour time hockey baseball



## 2-47

#### Listen to the conversation.

Anna, Steve and Yeong-min are discussing their holiday plans.

## Vocabulary and listening



Match the words with the pictures.

Xiānggǎng 1 香港 Xīnjlāpõ 3 新加坡

jīngjù 2 京剧 yīnyuèhuì 4 音乐会









Now listen and say the words.

Annà Yǒngmín shǐdifū jiàqī nǐmen dǎsuan 安娜: 永民,史蒂夫,假期你们打算 zuò shénme 做什么?

Yǒngmín Wǒ měi gè jiàqī dōu qù lǚxíng 永民: 我每个假期都去旅行。

shǐdìfū wǒ yě dǎsuan qù lǚxíng huòzhě huí jiā 史蒂夫:我也打算去旅行,或者回家。

Annà Bié huí jiā le tài yuǎn le 安娜:别回家了,太远了!

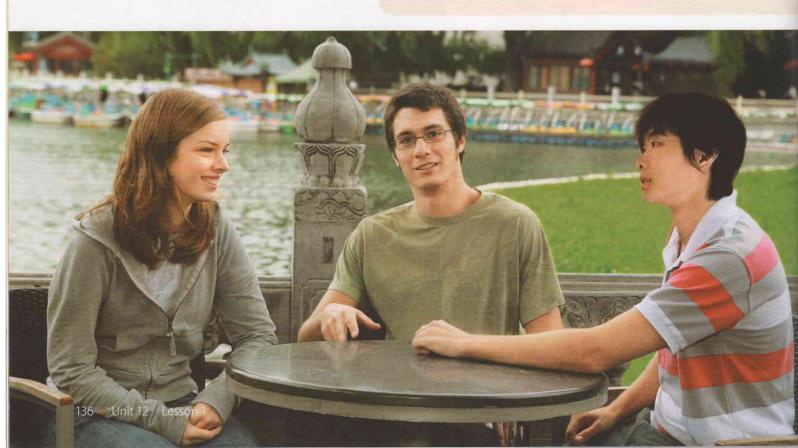
Women yiqi qù lǚxíng hào ma 我们一起去旅行,好吗?

Shǐdìfū Qù shénme difang Xīnjlāpō háishi 史蒂夫:去什么地方?新加坡还是

> Xlānggǎng 香港?

Yǒngmín Dāngrán shì Xiānggǎng wǒ xǐhuan Xiānggǎng 永民: 当然是 香港,我喜欢香港。

Ānnà Xīnjiāpō tài yuǎn le qù Xiānggǎng ba 安娜: 新加坡太远了,去香港吧。



Zài nàli wǒmen kēyǐ gòuwù yě 在那里我们可以购物,也 kěyǐ tīng yīnyuèhuì 可以听音乐会。

Shǐdìfū Nàme wǒmen qù Xiānggǎng ba 史蒂夫:那么我们去香港吧。

Yǒngmín Wǒmen zěnme qù Zuò fēijī háishi 永民: 我们怎么去? 坐飞机还是

> zuò huǒchē 坐 火车?

Annà Dāngrán shì zuò fēijī fēijī hěn 安娜: 当然是坐飞机,飞机很

fāngbiàn 方便。

Yǒngmín Huí Běijīng yǐhòu wǒmen kěyǐ qù 永民:回北京以后我们可以去

kàn jĩngjù 看京剧。

shǐdìfū Tài hǎo le wò zuì xǐhuan kàn jīngjù 史蒂夫: 太好了,我最喜欢看京剧。

#### 生词 New words

dǎsuan 打算	plan	Xiānggǎng 香港	Hong Kong
huòzhě 或者	or (in a statement)	nàme 那么	then, so
huí 回	go back	fēijī 飞机	aeroplane
bié 别	do not	yǐhòu 以后	after
difang 地方	place	jīngjù 京剧	Beijing opera
Xīnjiāpō 新加坡	Singapore		



#### Listen again and check the correct answers.

Annà Yǒngmín hé Shǐdifū yào qù 1 安娜、永民 和史蒂夫要去 shénme difang 什么地方?

Běljīng

□a北京

Xiānggǎng

□b香港

Xīnjiāpō

□¢新加坡

Tāmen jiàqī bù dāsuan zuò shénme 2 他们假期不打算做什么?

kàn jīngjù

□a看京剧

tîng yînyuèhuì

□b听音乐会

páshān

□c爬山

Tārmen dǎsuan zěnme qù Xiānggǎng 3 他们 打算 怎么去 香港?

zuò huŏchē

□a坐 火车

zuò dìtiě

□b坐 地铁

zuò fēijī

□c坐飞机

Work in groups of three and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Create your own plans for the coming holiday.

### **Pronunciation and speaking**

#### Sentence intonation



Listen to the sentences. Pay attention to the intonation.

Women mingtiān qù hảo ma 1 我们 明天 去, 好吗? ↗

Jiàqĩ wõ xiăng qù gōngzuò

2 假期我想去工作。>

Wǒ dǎsuan qù lǎxíng nǐ ne

3 我打算去旅行, 你呢? ↗

Xīnjiāpō tài yuǎn le

4新加坡太远了。\

Now listen again and say the sentences. Make sure you use the correct intonation.



2 Read the sentences aloud.

Women yīqi qù lǚxíng háo ma

1 我们一起去旅行,好吗?

Wŏmen kěyĭ qù kàn jîngjù

2 我们可以去看京剧。

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù nǐ ne

3 我叫王玉, 你呢?

Wǒ zuì xǐhuan tīng yīnyuèhuì

4 我最喜欢听音乐会。

Now listen and repeat.



#### Listen and say the words.

jiàqī	dăsuan	huíjiā
1 假期	打算	回家
yǐhòu	dāngrán	huòzhě
2 以后	当然	或者
lǚxíng	yīnyuèhuì	jīngjù
3 旅行	音乐会	京剧

#### 4 Work in pairs.

**Student A:** Think of an activity you plan to do on holiday. **Student B:** Ask Student A questions about the activity he or she wants to do.

Nǐ jiàqī dăsuan zuò shénme

A: 你 假期 打算 做 什么?

Wǒ dăsuan

B: 我 打算 ······

Nǐ dăsuan qù shénme dìfang

A: 你 打算 去 什么 地方?

Wŏ dăsuan qù

B: 我 打算 去 ······

Nǐ hé shél yīqǐ qù

A: 你和谁一起去?

Wŏ

B: 我······

Now change roles.



#### CHINESE TO GO

Expressions for travellers

wo yào dìng piào dìng fángjiān 我要订票/订房间。 I want to book a ticket/room.

wo yào tuì piào gǎlqlān 我要退票/改签。 I want to get a refund/change a ticket.

### Reading and writing

#### Match the pictures with the names of the cities.



Shànghải 1 上海



Běijing 2 北京



Xī' ān 3 西安



Guăngzhōu 广州



Read Wang Yu's online dialogue with Bob and Peter, her friends in the UK.

### 生词 New words

jīnnián		Xî' ān	
今年	this year	西安	Xi' an
nián		yīnggāl	
年	year	应该	should
hǎowán		Bīngmäyŏng	Terracotta
好玩	fun	兵马俑	Warriors
shuō		piàoliang	
说	say	漂亮	pretty
zhĭ		chéngshì	
只	only	城市	city
juéde		qiān	
觉得	think, feel	千	thousand
bān	measure	lìshĭ	
班	word	历史	history
cóng		zhŭyi	
从	from	主意	idea



Wang Yu

## 

#### & Bob

Jīnnián jiàgī wǒ dǎsuan qù Zhōngguó lǎxíng 今年 假期 我 打算 去 中国 旅行。 Zhōngguó hǎo wán de dìfang hěn duō dànshì wǒ 中国 好玩的地方很多,但是我 zhǐ kĕyǐ qù yī gè dìfang Péngyou shuō Shànghǎi 只可以去一个地方。朋友说 上海 hé Běijîng dōu hěn bùcuò Nimen juéde ne 和北京都很不错。你们觉得呢?

#### Wang Yu

Qù Běijīng ba Měi tiān dõu yǒu liǎng bān fēijī 去北京吧。每天都有两班飞机 cóng Yīngguó dào Běijīng hěn fāngbiàn 从 英国 到 北京、很 方便。

#### **Peter**

Xī' ān shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de dìfang wǒ juéde 西安是我最喜欢的地方,我觉得 nǐ yīnggāi qù Xī'ān Nǐ kěyǐ kàn Bīngmǎyŏng 你应该去西安。你可以看兵马俑。 Wáng Yù nǐ juéde yinggāi qù Xī'ān ma 王玉、你觉得 Bob 应该去西安吗?

#### Wang Yu

Xĩ ăn shì yĩ gè hěn piàoliang de chéngshì yǒu 西安是一个很漂亮的城市,有 iĭ qiān nián de lìshǐ 几千年的历史。

#### Bob.

Hào zhủyi wò xǐhuan lishi Xī'ān bùcuò 好主意,我喜欢历史。西安不错。 Wǒ zěnme qù Xĩ án ne 我怎么去西安呢?

#### Wang Yu

Nǐ kěvǐ zuò fēijī 你可以坐飞机。

关闭 (C) 发送 (S)

#### Check the true statements.

- zhi kĕyi qù yī gè dìfang lǎxíng □1 Bob只可以去一个地方旅行。
- Měl xînggî dõu yǒu llǎng bān fēljī □ 2 每星期都有两班飞机

cóng Yīngguó dào Běijīng 从英国到北京。

Bingmäyöng zài Běljing

- □ 3 兵马俑 在北京。
- Xī'ān yǒu jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ □ 4 西安有 几 千 年 的 历史。
- 4 Answer Wang Yu's questions.

■Wang Yu Wǒ xiǎng qù nǐ zhù de chéngshì lǚxíng 我 想 去 你 住 的 城市 旅行。 Nàli yǒu shénme hǎowán de dìfang ma 那里有什么好玩的地方吗?
Wǒ zhù de chéngshì hén 我住的城市很
yè kèyǐ 也可以。 Nǐ kěyǐ huòzhě 你可以。
(C)



### Language in use

Expressing alternatives using huòzhě háishi 或者/还是

#### Look at the sentences.

Nomen jîntian qù huòzhě míngtian qù 我们今天去或者 明天 去。 We go today or tomorrow.

Women jintian qù háishi mínatian qù 我们今天去还是明天去? Do we go today or tomorrow?

Tā shì Zhōngquórén huòzhě Hánguórén 他是 中国人 或者 韩国人。 He is Chinese or Korean.

Tā shì Zhōngguórén háishi Hánguórén 他是 中国人 还是 韩国人? Is he Chinese or Korean?

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Both 还是 and 或者 are used to express alternatives.
- 2 Both 还是 and 或者 can be used in questions.
- 3 或者 can only be used in statements.
- 2 Write answers to the questions using 或者 and the words in brackets.

Jiàgi ni dăsuan zuò shénme lűxíng göngzuð

1 假期 你 打算 做 什么? (旅行、工作)

Măkè xiăng xué shénme

jīngjù wăngqiú

2 马克 想 学 什么?

( 京剧、网球 )

Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.



#### Look at the sentences.

Adverbial		Adverbial (Time)	Predicate		
(Time)	Subject		Adverb	Verb	Complement / Object
	wŏ 我	měi nián 毎年	dōu 都	qù 去	lǚxíng 旅行。
Měi nián 每年	wŏ 我		dōu 都	qù 去	lǚxíng 旅行。
	shǐdifū 史蒂夫	měi gè 每个 zhōumò 周末	dōu 都	kàn 看	diànyǐng 电影。
Měi gè 每个 zhōumò 周末	shǐdìfū 史蒂夫		dōu 都	kàn 看	diànyǐng 电影。
	Mǎkè 马克	měi nián 每年 jiàqī 假期	dōu 都	huí 回	jiā 家。
Měi nián 每年 jìǎqī 假期	Mčkè 马克		dōu 都	huí 回	jiā 家。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1每 ······ 都 ······ indicates regular events.
- 2都 can appear before the adverblal time phrase.
- 3 The subject of the sentence can appear before or after the adverbial time phrase.
- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
  - měi gè Mǎkè dǎ lánqlú Xīngqīsān 1 每个/马克/打篮球/星期三/ dōu 都/。
  - měi tiān xué Zhōngwén dōu Shǐdìfū 2 每 天 / 学 / 中文 / 都 / 史蒂夫 / shàngwǔ 上午 /。
- Turn to page 171 for grammar reference.

## LESSON | 3

### **Communication activity**

Work in two groups.

**Group A:** You work in a travel agency which specializes in action-packed holidays.

**Group B:** You and your family and/or friends want to go on a package tour to China. You want an active and interesting holiday.

Look at the three package tours. Prepare or answer questions about:

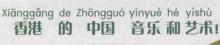
- when the tour begins/ends
- · the kinds of activities/places of interest
- · transport to and around the place

- Talk to as many travel agents or potential customers as possible.
- S Group B vote for the travel agency which offers the best deal.
- Turn to pages 155 and 161 for more speaking practice.



#### Shàolínsì gōngfu 小林寺 功夫!

- xué gōngfu · 学 功夫! páshān
- ·爬山! yóulǎn jǐngdiǎn ·游览景点!



xué Zhōngguó yīnyuè

- ★学 中国 音乐! xué shūfǎ
- ★ 学 书法! chī Zhōngcān
- ★吃 中餐!



### Nèiměnggǔ zhìyuànzhě xiàlìngyíng 内蒙古 志愿者 夏令营 bāngzhù háizimen xué Yīngyǔ

■ 帮助 孩子们 学 英语!

- hé háizimen yīqǐ yùndòng pīngpāngqiú zúqiú ■和孩子们一起 运动 (乒乓球、足球)! yóulǎn jǐngdiǎn
- ■游览 景点!

### **Cultural Corner**

## Chinese kung fu

Chinese martial arts, popularly known in English as kung fu, form one of the best-known examples of traditional Chinese culture. The principles of kung fu were inspired by various Chinese philosophies, as well as myths and legends, and the traits of animals. Some training styles focus on the mind, or "gi" power, and are called "internal", while others concentrate on improving muscle and cardiovascular fitness and are labelled "external". Even though kung fu is often seen in films and literature, and practised by millions, it takes many years of study, and only a few highly trained people truly master kung fu.



## **Character writing**

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
A-A-	bamboo	篮、算
禾	grain	利、种

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

# 笔 租 箱 程

Match the words with the meanings.

1	hé 和	a plan
2	lángiú 篮球	b Hong Kong
3	dǎsuan 打算	c and
4	Xiānggǎng 香港	d basketball

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



## **Review and practice**

1 Circle the odd word out.

měi tiān	měi yuè	mingtiān
1 每 天	每月	明天
huòzhě	háishi	hé
2 或者	还是	和
lǚxíng	dăsuan	xiǎng
3 旅行	打算	想

2 Complete the sentences with 或者 or 还是.

1		dōu kěyǐ 都可以。
2	Nǐ xiǎng tīng yīnyuèhuì 你想听音乐会_	kàn diànyǐng 看 电影?
3	Tā jiào Mǎ Yǒng 他叫马永	Mǎkè 马克?
4	Wǒmen xiàwǔ qù dǎ lớngiú 我们下午去打篮球	pingpāngqiú bā 乒乓球 吧。

- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.
  - dǎsuan lǚxíng Wáng Yù qù

    1 打算 /旅行 / 王 玉 / 去 /。
    měigè huí jiā tā dū jiàqī

    2 每个 / 回家 / 他 / 都 / 假期 /。
    zhǐ yī gè qù wǒ dìfang kěyǐ

    3 只 / 一个 / 去 / 我 / 地方 / 可以 /。
  - Shànghởi tā xǐhuan zuì qù 4 上海 /她/喜欢/最/去/。

## Vocabulary extension

Check the activities you would like to do during the summer holiday. Think about the places you would like to go to.

shíxí

□实习

work as an intern

dăgōng

□打工

do part-time work

yěyíng

□野营

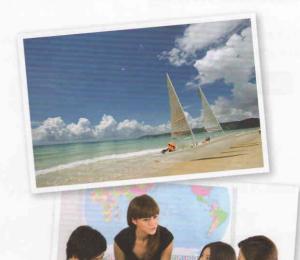
go camping

zuò zhìyuànzhě

□做 志愿者

work as a volunteer

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your activities.



# **Vocabulary list**

打算	dăsuan	V.	plan
或者	huòzhě	conj.	or (in a statment)
回	huí	v.	go back
别	bié	adv.	do not
地方	dìfang	n.	place
新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	n.	Singapore
香港	Xiānggăng	n.	Hong Kong
那么	nàme	conj.	then, so
飞机	fēijī	n.	aeroplane
以后	yǐhòu	n.	after
京剧	jīngjù	n.	Beijing opera
今年	jīnnián	n.	this year
年	nián	n.	year
好玩	hǎowán	adj.	fun
说	shuō	V.	say
只	zhĭ	adv.	only
觉得	juéde	V.	think, feel

班	bān	measure	
-,-		word	
从	cóng	prep.	from
西安	Xī' ān	n.	Xi'an
应该	yīnggāi	modal v.	should
兵马俑	Bīngmäyŏng	n.	Terracotta Warriors
漂亮	piàoliang	adj.	pretty
城市	chéngshì	n.	city
7	qiān	num.	thousand
历史	lìshĭ	n.	history
主意	zhǔyi	n.	idea
广州	Guångzhōu	n.	Guangzhou
实习	shíxí	V.	work as an intern
打工	dågöng	V.	do part-time work
野营	yĕyíng	V.	go camping
志愿者	zhiyuànzhě	n.	volunteer

## Review 3

## Vocabulary

II Circle the odd word out.

zúqiú	wǎngqiú	lángiú	yóuyōng
1足球	网球	篮球	游泳
dōngbian	qiánbian	běibían	nánbian
2 东边	前边	北边	南边
shūdiàn	yínháng	yóujú	fùjìn
3 书店	银行	邮局	附近
fēljī	huǒchē	dìtiě	difang
4 飞机	火车	地铁	地方

Look at the phrases in the box.

dǎ lánqiú zuò gōnggòng qìchē 打篮球 坐 公共 汽车 xué tiàowǔ qù Shànghǎi 去 上海

### Now choose the correct verb to go with the nouns.

ditiě wǎngqiú Běijīng jīngjù 1地铁 2 网球 3 北京 4京剧

- B Choose the correct pinyin for the words.
  - 1房子 b fángzi c fánzi a fóngzi 2旅行 b lűxíng a luxing c låging 3好玩 a hǎowén b hǎowǎn c hảowán 4运动 a yùndòng b yùdòng c yūndòng 5怎么 b zènme c zénme a zěnme 6觉得 a juède b quéde c juéde

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

fùjìn bùcuò xǐhuan 附近 不错 喜欢 jiāotōng jiàqī yīqǐ 交通 假期 一起

Wáng Yù míngtiān wǒmen qù páshān ba
1 王 玉,明天 我们 \_\_\_\_\_ 去 爬山 吧。
gǐngwèn yǒu dìtiězhàn ma
2 请问,\_\_\_\_\_ 有 地铁站 吗?
Mǎkè nǐ dǎ lánqiú ma
3 马克,你 \_\_\_\_\_ 打篮球吗?
nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme
4 \_\_\_\_ 你 打算 做 什么?
Zhèr de fāngbiàn ma
5 这儿的 \_\_\_\_\_ 方便 吗?
Shànghǎi shì yī gè hěn de dìfang
6 上海 是一个很 \_\_\_\_\_ 的 地方。

## Grammar

Write questions for the answers using the words in the box.

zěnme ma shénme năli 怎么 吗 什么 哪里

#### 2 Match the parts to complete the sentences.

Gōngyuán Lù zài yínháng de qiánbian 1 公园 路在 银行 的 前边、

Fángzì zài dìtiězhàn fùjìn 2 房子在地铁站附近,

wǒ jlā fùjìn yǒu gōnggòng qìchēzhàn 3 我家附近有 公共 汽车站。

Wǒ xǐhuan gòuwù

4我喜欢购物,

Wǒ xǐhuan chī Zhōngcān

5 我喜欢吃中餐,

Tā zǎoshang yào pǎobù

6他 早上 要跑步,

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù 7 我们 坐 地铁去

tā xǐhuan chī Hánguócàl a 她 喜欢 吃 韩国菜 。

xiàwǔ yào tī zúqiú b下午要踢足球。

yóujú de hòublan

c邮局的 后边。

tā xǐhuan zuò yùndòng d她 喜欢 做 运动。

dànshì méiyŏu dìtiĕzhàn

e 但是 没有 地铁站。

hálshì zuò chūzūchē qù

f还是坐出租车去?

jiāotōng hěn fāngbiàn

g 交通 很 方便。

Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

ba 吧 qù 去	hǎo ma 好吗 bù huì 不会	háishí 还是 dǎ 打	
Nǐ xiǎng A: 你想	yóuyǒng ma 游泳 吗?		
Wǒ bù huì yóuyò B: 我不会游泳			
Nàme wŏmen qù A: 那么 我们 去		_?	
	á wǎngqiú dànshì v 下网球 ,但是?		
Hǎo wǒmen qi A: 好,我们去		pīngpāngqiú 乒乓球。	

Women zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù zuò dìtlě qù B: 我们坐 公共 汽车去 \_\_\_\_ 坐地铁去?

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù A: 我们 坐 地铁去 \_\_\_\_\_。

Write sentences about what you can and cannot do using the words in the box.

tiàowǔ 跳舞	bèngjí 蹦极	chōnglàng 冲浪
huáxuě	dă lángiú	pāizhào
滑雪	打篮球	拍照

2

3 \_\_\_\_\_

4 \_\_\_\_\_

5

6 \_\_\_\_\_

## Integrated skills



Listen to the conversation and complete the table.

dìdiǎn 地点 Places	jùlí 距离 Distance
gàuwù zhōngxīn 购物 中心	
cāntīng 餐厅	
jīchǎng 机场	

## Now listen again and check the true statements.

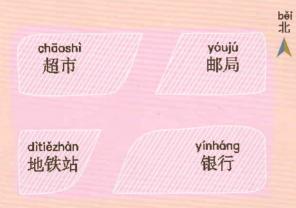
Annà hé Wáng Yù yào qù Guìlín lǚxíng

- □1安娜和王玉要去桂林旅行。
- Annà bù xiảng qù gòuwù zhōngxīn tā xiảng □ 2安娜不 想 去购物 中心,她 想
  - qù chāoshì 去超市。

Tāmen dăsuan qù Rìběn cāntīng

- □ 3 她们 打算 去日本 餐厅。 Cāntīng fùjìn yǒu yīqè fúzhuāng shìchǎng
- □ 4 餐厅 附近 有 一个 服装 市场。 Āṇṇà dǎsuan zuò chūzūchē gù jīchǎng
- □ 5安娜 打算 坐出租车去 机场。
- Tāmen zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù jīchǎng 口 6 她们 坐 公共 汽车去 机场。

## Read the map and answer the questions.



Yóujú zài nǎli Dìtlězhàn ne 1 邮局在哪里? 地铁站呢?



Dàxué zài năli 2 大学在哪里?



Gōnggòngqìchēzhàn zài nălì Chāoshì ne 3 公共 汽车站在哪里?超市呢?

## Read the passage.

Mák<del>è</del> xǐhuan yùndòng Tā xǐhuan pǎobù 马克喜欢 运动。他喜欢跑步、 dă lángiú tī zúglú hái xǐhuan yóuyŏng 打 篮球、踢 足球,还 喜欢 游泳, dànshì tā bù xǐhuan dǎ pīngpāngqiú 但是他不喜欢打 乒乓球 。马克 mějtian dou zuò yùndòng Zhège zhoumò 每天都做运动。这个周末,他 dăsuan hé Shidifū viai qù páshān ránhòu qù 打算 和史蒂夫一起 去 爬山, 然后 去 cantīng chi wănfàn Măkè xihuan chi Zhongcan 餐厅 吃 晚饭。马克 喜欢 吃 dànshì Shidifū xihuan chi Yidàlicài Wänshang 但是 史蒂夫 喜欢 吃 意大利菜。 tāmen dăsuan qù kàn diànying 他们打算去看电影。

#### Now answer the questions.

Måkè xǐhuan shénme yùndòng

- 1 马克喜欢 什么 运动?
  - Măkẻ bù xǐhuan shénme yùndòng
- 2 马克不 喜欢 什么 运动? Mǎkè měltlān dōu zuò shénme
- 3 马克 每天 都 做 什么?
  - Măkê zhège zhōumò dăsuan zuò shénme
- 4 马克这个 周末 打算 做 什么? Shǐdìfū xǐhuan chī shénme cài
- 5 史蒂夫喜欢 吃 什么 菜?

#### 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- fùjìn yóujú méiyǒu 1 附近/邮局/没有/。
- Wáng Yù qù lǚxíng dǎsuan huíjiā huòzhě
- 2 王玉/去旅行/打算/回家/或者/。
  - xǐhuan Mǎkè dǎ lángiú yóuyŏng háishi
- 3 喜欢/马克/打篮球/游泳/还是/?
- tāmen zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù zuò dìtiě qù 4 他们/坐 公共 汽车去/坐地铁去/ háishi 环是/?

dōu měi gè jiàqī huíjiā tā 5 都/每个假期/回家/他/。

## **Enjoy Chinese**

学

xué 学 learn dàxué 大学 university zhōngxué 中学 middle school xiǎoxué 小学 primary school xuéxiào 学校 school xuésheng

student



学生

The original meaning of 学 is to learn or accept knowledge. Its ancient shape looks like a child learning mathematics in a house. The top part represents two hands doing mathematics, while the bottom represents a child in a house. 以 is two hands. 介 indicates the roof of a house. ※ refers to the things being counted, and so is the child.



# Language support

## Numbers

0	líng 零	12	shí'èr 十二
1	yî	15	shíwǔ 十五
2	èr —	20	èrshí 二十
3	sãn 三	30	sānshí 三十
4	sì III	40	sìshí 四十
5	wǔ 五	100	yībǎi 一百
6	liù 六	150	yībǎi wǔshí 一百五十
7	qī 七	200	èrbǎi 二百
8	bā 八	255	èrbǎl wǔshíwǔ 二百五十五
9	jiǔ 九	378	sānbǎi qīshíbā 三百七十八
10	shí	591	wǔbǎi jiǔshíyī 五百 九十一
11	shíyī	1000	yīqiān 一千

# Months and days

January	Yīyuè 一月
February	Èryuè 二月
March	Sānyuè 三月
April	Sìyuè 四月
May	Wǔyuè 五月
June	Liùyuè 六月
July	Qīyuè 七月
August	Bāyuè 八月
September	Jiǔyuè 九月
October	Shíyuè 十月
November	Shíyīyuè 十一月
December	Shí' èryuè 十二月

Monday	Xīngqīyī 星期一
Tuesday	Xīngqī' èr 星期二
Wednesday	Xīngqīsān 星期三
Thursday	Xīngqīsì 星期四
Friday	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五
Saturday	Xīngqīliù 星期六
Sunday	Xīngqīrì tiān 星期日/天

## **Measure words**

Measure word	Pinyin	Main Use	Example	
<b></b>	gè	individual things, people	yī gè rén 一个人	
把	bă	objects that can be held	yī bǎ dāo 一把刀	
杯	bēi	cups/glasses	yī bēi jiǔ 一杯酒	
本	běn	books, magazines, printed matter	yī běn shū 一本书	
П	kŏu	people in a family	yī jiā wǔ kǒu rén 一家五口人	
双	shuāng	objects that naturally come in pairs	yī shuāng xié 一 双 鞋	

Measure word	Pinvin Main Use		Example
件	jiàn	clothing	yī jiàn chènshān 一件 衬衫
辆	liàng	wheeled vehicles (cars, bicycles, etc)	yī liàng chē 一辆车
间	jiān	rooms	yī jiān fángzi 一间房子
块	kuài	pieces of something	yī kuải shítou 一块石头
页	yè	pages of a book	yī yè shū 一页书
些	xiē	unspecified numbers, some	yīxiē xuésheng 一些 学生

## Pair work activities for Student A

## Unit 1

Introduce these people to Student B.



Lǐ Qīng 李 青



Mary



Jane



Steve

Tā shì 他是······ Tā shì 她是······

Tā jiào 他叫······ Tā jiào 她叫·····

Listen to Student B and write the people's names.









Imagine you are at a friend's party.

Greet each other, and introduce
yourself. You can pretend to be one
of the people above.

## Unit 2

Ask Student B these people's nationalities.









Tā Tā shì nǎ guó rén 他/她是哪国人?

Tā Tā shì rén ma 他/她是……人吗?

Tell Student B these people's nationalities.



Měiguórén 美国人



Fǎguórén 法国人



Jiānádàrén 加拿大人



Déguórén 德国人

Tā Tā shì rén 他/她是……人。 Shì tā tā shì rén 是,他/她是·····人。 Bù tā tā bù shì rén 不,他/她不是·····人。 Tā Tā shì rén 他/她是·····人。

Imagine you are at a conference. Greet each other and tell each other where you are from. Introduce the people above to your partner.

#### Create identities for Kate and her family. Include:

míngzi

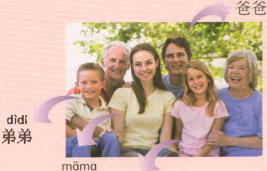
• 名字

gōngzuò • 工作 nă guó rén

· 哪 国 人 zhù zài nǎli

• 住在哪里

bàba 谷谷



Answer Student B's questions about Kate and her family.

Kate

3 Ask Student B about Li Na and her family. Include:

mingzi

• 名字

gōngzuò

妈妈

工作

nă guó rén

• 哪 国 人

zhù zài năli

• 住在哪里

Tā bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò 她爸爸做什么工作?

Lǐ Nà de bàba jiào shénme míngzi 李娜的爸爸叫 什么 名字?

> Tā shì nă guó rén 他是哪国人?

Tā zhù zài nǎli 他 住 在 哪里?



## Unit 4

Create a Sina profile for Jane.



- Answer Student B's questions about the profile that you have created.
- Ask Student B about the profile that he/she has created. Write the information here.



II Fill in the form for a job interview.

xìngmíng 姓名: niánlíng 年龄: guójí 国籍:	
diànhuà hàomă 电话 号码:shǒujī hàomă 手机 号码: diànǐ 地址: diànzǐ yóuxiāng 电子 邮箱:	

- Answer Student B's questions using your own form.
- Interview Student B for a job. Ask questions and complete the form.

xìngmíng 姓名: niánlíng 年龄: guóji 国籍:	
diànhuà hàomă 电话 号码: _ shǒujī hàomă 手机 号码: dìzhǐ	
地址:diànzǐ yóuxlāng 电子 邮箱: _	

## Unit 6

Ask Student B questions. Then complete the table and check the true statements.

Questions	Student B		
Nǐ de shēngrì shì 你的 生日 是 jǐ yuè jǐ hào 几月几号?	Tā Tā de shēngrì shì 他/她的 生日 是。 Tā Tā suì 他/她岁。		
	Tā Tā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì 他/她的 电话 号码是	_0	
	Tā Tā de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì 他/她的电子邮箱是	_0	
	Tā Tā xǐhuan chī Fǎguócài 他/她 喜欢 吃法国菜。		
	Tā Tā Xīngqītiān bù xué Zhōngwén 他/她 星期天 不 学 中文。		
	Tā Tā Xīngqīliù qù kàn diànyǐng 他/她星期六去看 电影 。		
Dar is in	Tā Tā bù xǐhuan Xīngqīyī 他/她不喜欢星期一。		
-	Tā Tā Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshāng qù pàiduì 他/她 星期五 晚上 去派对。		



Answer the questions with your own information. Write your answers in the Student A column.

Questions	Student A Student B
Nǐ Xīngqiyī zǎoshang jǐ diǎn L 你 星期一 早上 几 点 qǐchuáng 起床(get up)?	
Nǐ Xīngqītiān zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 2 你星期天 早上 几点 qǐchuáng 起床?	
Nǐ Xīngqījǐ zuò yùndòng 3 你星期几做 运动?	
Nǐ shénme shíjiān zuò yùndòng 4 你 什么 时间 做 运动?	
Nǐ zuì xǐhuan chī shénme 5 你最喜欢吃什么?	
Nǐ qù tǐng yīnyuèhuì ma 6 你去听 音乐会吗?	
Nǐ zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi 7 你最喜欢的演员是谁?	
Nǐ yǒu bókè ma 8 你有博客吗?	
Nǐ shénme shíjiān xiẻ bókè 9 你 什么 时间 写博客?	, 1 Pa

- 2 Ask Student B these questions and write his/her answers in the Student B column.
- Compare the answers. How similar are your habits?



Decide the colour and price for the following clothes.



- 2 Answer Student B's questions about your clothes.
- 3 Ask Student B about these clothes items:



Nǐ yǒu shénme yánsè de 你有什么颜色的……?

Duōshao qián 多少 钱? Piányi yīdiǎnr ba 便宜一点儿吧。



Ask Student B directions to these places and write on the map:

> gōngyuán xǐshǒujiān 公园 洗手间 chāoshì xuéxiào 超市 学校

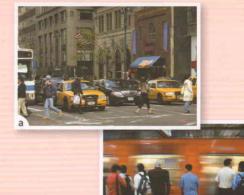


Que Student B directions to the places he/she wants to go to.



## Unit 10

Look carefully at the photos. You have 30 seconds to memorize as many of the details as you can.







Close your books. Take turns to describe the photos from memory. Write down your observations.

Zhàopiàn li yǒu huángsè de chūzūchē A: 照片 里有 黄色 的出租车……。

Zhàopiàn li yǒu B: 照片 里有……。

B Look at the photos. Compare who has the most correct observations.



Complete the sentences about yourself. Write three true sentences and three false sentences.

Wǒ xǐhuan

1 我喜欢 \_\_\_\_\_\_。(sports)

wǒ kànguo bǐsài 2 我 看过 比赛。

wǒ měi xīngqī dōu 3 我每星期都\_\_\_\_\_\_。(sports)

Wǒ bù xǐhuan 4 我不喜欢 \_\_\_\_\_\_。(sports)

Wǒ qùguo 5 我去过\_\_\_\_\_。(place)

Wǒ huì shuō

6 我会说\_\_\_\_\_。(language)

- 2 Exchange sentences with Student B. Guess which of his/her sentences are false. Write a cross (x) after the false sentences.
- Compare the results to see who got more correct guesses.

## Unit 12

Ask Student B questions and complete the holiday plan.

> Jiàgī nǐ dăsuan zuò shénme 假期你 打算 做 什么?

## Holiday plan

	Name	Activity
1	Lǐ Hóng 李 红	
2	Jiéfū 杰夫	qù páshān 去爬山。
3	Zhāng Míng 张 明	
4	Líndá 琳达	xué chōnglàng 学 冲浪。
5	Mǎtè 马特	
6	Lili NG AN	gēn jiějie yīqǐ qù nǎinai jiā 跟姐姐一起去奶奶家。
7	Bèisī 贝丝	
8	Fēibǐ 非比	xlān shíxí ránhòu huíjiā 先 实习,然后 回家。

Answer Student B's questions using the holiday plan above.

## Pair work activities for Student B

## Unit 1

Listen to Student A and write the people's names.









Introduce these people to Student A.



Jack Hey



Wáng Péng



**Emma** 



Matt

Tā shì 他是…… Tā shì 她是……

Tā jiào 他 叫 …… Tā jiào 她 叫 ……

Imagine you are at a friend's party. Greet each other, and introduce yourself. You can pretend to be one of the people above.

## Unit 2

Tell Student A these people's nationalities.









Rìběnrén 日本人

Yìndùrén

Àodàlìyàrén Yîngquórén 印度人 澳大利亚人 英国人

Tā tā shì rén 他/她是……人。

> tā tā shì 是,他/她是……人。

Bù tā tā bù shì rén Tā tā shì rén 不,他/她不是……人。他/她是……

Ask Student A these people's nationalities.









Tā Tā shì năguó rén 他/她是哪国人?

Tā Tā shì rén ma 他/她是……人吗?

1 Imagine you are at a conference. Greet each other and tell each other where you are from. Introduce the people above to your partner.

#### 11 Create identities for Li Na and her family. Include:

minazi 名字

nặ quó rén 哪 国人

gōngzuò

zhù zài năli

工作

• 住在哪里



#### 2 Ask Student A about Kate and her family. Include:

mingzi

• 名字

gōngzuò · 工作

nă quó rén 哪国人

zhù zài năli

• 住在哪里



de bàba jiào Kate 的爸爸叫 shénme mingzi 什么 名字?

Tā bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò 她爸爸做什么工作?

Tā shì nă guó rén 他是哪国人?

Tā zhù zài năli 他住在哪里?

B Answer Student A's questions about Li Na and her family.

## Unit 4

Create a Sina profile for David.



2 Ask Student A about the profile that he/she has created. Write the information here.



3 Answer Student A's questions about the profile that you have created.

## 11 Fill in the form for a job interview.

xìngmíng
姓名:
niánlíng
年龄:
guójí
国籍:
<b>二</b> 不日·
diànhuà hàomă
电话 号码:
shouji hàomă
手机 号码:
dìzhĭ
地址:
diànzĭ yóuxiāng
电子 邮箱:

# 2 Interview Student A for a job. Ask questions and complete the form.

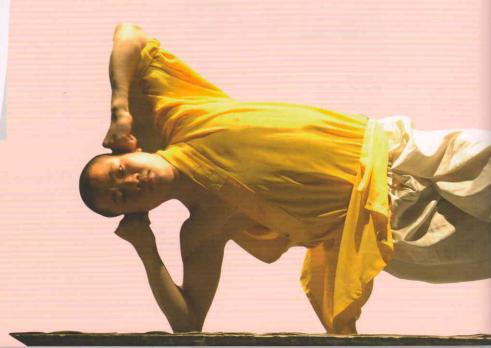
xìngmíng
姓名:
niánlíng
年龄:
guójí
国籍:
diànhuà hàomǎ 电话 号码: shǒujī hàomǎ 手机 号码: dìzhǐ 地址:
diànzĭ yóuxiāng
电子 邮箱:

# Answer Student A's questions using your own form.

# Unit 6

Ask Student A questions. Then complete the table and check the true statements.

Questions	Student A	
Nǐ de shēngrì shì 你的 生日 是 jǐ yuè jǐ hào 几月几号?	Tā Tā de shēngrì shì 他/她的 生日 是。 Tā Tā suì 他/她岁。	
	Tā Tā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì 他/她的 电话 号码是。	
. 1	Tā Tā de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì 他/她的电子 邮箱 是。	
	Tā Tā xǐhuan chī Fǎguócài 他/她 喜欢 吃法国菜。	
	Tā Tā Xīngqītlān bù xué Zhōngwén 他/她 星期天 不 学 中文。	
	Tā Tā Xīngqīliù qù kàn diànyǐng 他/她星期六去看 电影。	
	Tā Tā bù xǐhuan Xīngqīyī 他/她不喜欢星期一。	
	Tā Tā Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshang qù pàiduì 他/她 星期五 晚上 去 派对。	



Answer the questions with your own information. Write your answers in the Student B column.

Questions	Student A	Student B
Nǐ Xīngqīyī zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 1 你星期一 早上 几 点 qǐchuáng 起床 (get up)?		
Nǐ Xīngqītiān zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 2 你 星期天 早上 几 点 qǐchuáng 起床?		
Nǐ Xīngqījī zuò yùndòng 3 你星期几做 运动 ?		
Nǐ shénme shíjlān zuò yùndòng 4 你 什么 时间 做 运动 ?	*	
Nǐ zuì xǐhuan chī shénme 5 你最喜欢吃什么?		
Nǐ qù tīng yīnyuèhuì ma 6 你去听 音乐会吗?		
Nǐ zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi 7 你最喜欢的 演员 是谁?		
Nǐ yǒu bókè ma 8 你有博客吗?		
Nǐ shénme shíjiān xiě bókè 9 你 什么 时间 写博客?		

- 2 Ask Student A these questions and write his/her answers in the Student A column.
- 3 Compare the answers. How similar are your habits?

# nswer the questions with your own information.

## Unit 8

Decide the colour and price for the following clothes items.



2 Ask Student A about these clothes:



Nǐ yǒu ma 你有 ……吗?

> Nǐ yǒu shénme yánsè de 你有什么颜色的……?

Duōshao qián 多少 钱? Piányi yīdiǎnr ba 便宜一点儿吧。

Answer Student A's questions about your clothes items.

Give Student A directions to the places he/she wants to go to.





Ask Student A directions to these places and write on the map above:

gòuwù zhōngxīn	yinháng
购物 中心	银行
yóujú	shūdiàn
邮局	书店



## Unit 10

Look carefully at the photos. You have 30 seconds to memorize as many of the details as you can.







Close your books. Take turns to describe the photos from memory. Write down your observations.

Zhàoplàn li yǒu jǐ gè rén qí A: 照片 里有几个人骑 zìxíngchē 自行车……。

Zhàopiàn li yǒu B: 照片 里有……。

Look at the photos. Compare who has the most correct observations.



Complete the sentences about yourself. Write three true sentences and three false sentences.

- Exchange sentences with Student A. Guess which of his/her sentences are false. Write a cross (x) after the false sentences.
- Compare the results to see who got more correct guesses.

## Unit 12

Answer Student A's questions using the holiday plan.

## Holiday plan

	Name	Activity	
1	Lǐ Hóng 李 红	tīng yīnyuèhùi 听 音乐会。	
2	Jiéfū 杰夫		
3	Zhāng Míng 张 明	qù Xiāng <b>gǎng lǚxíng</b> 去 香 <b>港 旅行</b> 。	
4	Líndá 琳达		
5	Mǎtè 马特	zuò zhìyuànzhě 做 志愿者。	
6	Lili Ne no		
7	Bèisī 贝丝	qù Guìlín lǚxíng 去桂林旅行。	
8	Fēibǐ 菲比		

2 Ask Student A questions and complete the holiday plan above.

Jiàqī nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme 假期你 打算 做 什么?

## **Grammar reference**

### Unit 1

#### Word order of Chinese sentences (I)

A simple Chinese sentence is made up of two parts, the subject and the predicate. The predicate usually consists of a verb and an object.

Cubicet	Predicate		
Subject	Verb	Object	
Wŏ 我	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王玉。	
I am Wang	Yu.		

This word order of subject-verb-object is similar to English.

When we use 叫 and 姓 as verbs, an object must follow.

Subject	Verb	Surname		
₩Ŏ	xìng	Zhāng		
我	姓	张。		
	,	11/0		
My surnar	ne is Zhang.			
Tā	xing	Lĭ		
他	姓	李。		
·-	,—	30		
His surname is Li.				
Subject	Verb	Full name		
Tō	jlào	Zhāng Xiǎoxiǎo		
Tō 他	jiào III	Zhāng Xiǎoxiǎo 张 小小。		
Tō 他	jlào	Zhāng Xiǎoxiǎo 张 小小。		
Tō 他	jiào III	Zhāng Xiǎoxiǎo 张 小小。		
Tō 他 He is calle Tā	jiào 미니 d Zhang Xiaoxia	Zhāng Xiǎoxiǎo 张 小小。 no.		
тё 他 He is calle	jiào III d Zhang Xiaoxia jiào III	zhāng Xiǎoxiǎo 张 小小。 io.		

不 can be used before 叫 and 姓 to express the negative form.

wo bù xìng wóng 我不姓王。 My surname is not Wang. wo bù jiào Lǐ Lì 我不叫李力。I am not called Li Li.

是, the verb "be", is used to link two nominal expressions that refer to the same person or object.

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun
我	shì 是	lǎoshī 老师。
I am a teache	er.	
他	shì 是	Zhāng Míng 张明。
He is Zhang Ming.		

## Questions ending with 呢

The question particle 呢 is placed after a noun or pronoun to form a follow-up question meaning "how/ what about". The speaker and the listener are assumed to know what the question refers to.

Preceding sentence	Follow-up question	
wǒ xìng Zhōng 我姓张,	nǐ ne 你呢?	
My surname is Zhang, w	hat about you?	
Tā xìng Zhāng 他姓张,	tā ne 她呢?	
His surname is Zhang, what about her?		
Nǐ shì xuésheng 你是学生,	tā ne 他呢?	
You are a student, what about him?		
wo shi xuésheng 我是学生,	Zhāng Míng ne 张 明 呢?	
I'm a student, what about Zhang Ming?		

### Unit 2

## Yes/no questions ending with 吗

吗 is usually used at the end of a declarative sentence to form a yes/no question. The word order remains unchanged.

	Preceding sentence	ma	Answer	
	Nǐ shì Mǎkè 你是马克	ma 吗?	Shì Wǒ shì Mǒkè 是,我是马克。	
Are you Mark?			Yes, I'm Mark.	
	Tā xìng Lǐ 他姓李	ma 吗?	shì tā xìng Lǐ 是,他姓李。	
Is his surname Li?			Yes, his surname is Li.	
	Nǐ shì xuésheng 你是 学生	ma 吗?	Shì wǒ shì xuésheng 是,我是学生。	
	Are you a student?		Yes, I'm a student.	
	tā shì Zhōngguórén 她是中国人	ma 吗?	Bù tā bù shì Zhōngguórén 不,她不是中国人。	
	Is she Chinese?		No, she is not Chinese.	

#### Questions with interrogative pronoun 哪里/哪

哪里 (where) and 哪 (which) are interrogative pronouns. They have the same position in sentences as the answers, that is to say, the word order in the question is the same as in the corresponding statement.

Nǐ zhù zài nălì

你住在哪里?

Where do you live?

Wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn 我住在伦敦。

I live in London.

Nĩ shì nă quó rén

你是哪国人?

Which country are you from?

Wo shì Yingguórén

我是英国人。

I am British.

# Negative adverb 不

不 is a negative adverb when it is used alone or before the predicate.

Subject	Adverb	Predicate	
他	bù 不	xìng Zhōng 姓 张。	
His surnam	ne is not Zhang.		
我	bù 不	shì Yīngguórén 是英国人。	
I'm not British.			

不 can also be used in a rhetorical question to confirm a fact.

Nǐ bù xìng Zhāng ma

你不姓 张 吗? Is your surname not Zhang?

## Unit 3

## Adverbs 也/都

The adverb 也 means "also" or "too". It is used after the subject and before the verb.

	Predicate		
Subject	Adverb	Verb	Object / Noun
wŏ 我	yě 也	xìng 姓	Wáng 王。
My surna	My surname is also Wang.		
他	yě 也	shì 是	xuésheng 学生。
He is also a student.			

也 cannot be used before the subject, nor at the very end of a sentence.

The adverb 都 is similar to 也 in usage.

		Predicate		
Subject	Adverbial	Verb	Object / Noun	
Tāmen 她们	dōu 都	shì 是	Yīngguórén 英国人。	
They are all British.				
tāmen 他们	dōu zài yīyuàn 都在医院	gōngzuò 工作。		
They all work at the hospital.				

#### Word order of Chinese sentences (II)

Word order in Chinese can be quite different from English. In Chinese, adverbs are used before the verbs they modify. In English, they can occur either before or after the verb.

-		Predicate		
Subject	Adverb	Verb	Object / Noun	
tā 他	bù 不	xìng 姓	Lín 林。	
His surname is not Lin.				
我	yě 也	shì 是	Zhōngguórén 中国人。	
I am als	I am also Chinese.			
Tāmen 她们	dōu 都	shì 是	lǎoshī 老师。	
They are all teachers.				

## Pronouns as modifiers (+的)

Personal pronouns (e.g, 我) followed by the word 的 express possession. When personal pronouns are followed by a kinship term, Hi is often omitted (e.g., 我爸爸).

For persons other than family members, the use of is optional, depending on the closeness of the relationship. It is usually omitted if the relationship is close.

Personal pronoun	de	Noun				
wò 我	de 的	shū ‡}				
		14				
	usually needed for					
wŏ	de	bàba				
我	(的)	爸爸				
my father (的 i members.)	s usually omitted	for family				
tā	de	gēge				
她	(的)	哥哥				
her elder brot family membe	her elder brother (的 is usually omitted for family members.)					
tā	de	lăoshī				
他	的	老师				
his teacher (His relationship with the teacher is distant.)						
nĭ	de	jiā				
你	(的)	家				
your home (的 is often omitted before "home", a place where family members live.)						

	shéi
Interrogative pronoun	<b>淮</b>
interrogative proribuit	<b>州</b> 主

The interrogative pronoun 谁 can be used at the beginning of a question as the subject.

Subject	Verb	Object		
Shéi 谁	shì 是	Mǎkè 马克?		
Who is Mari	k?			
Shéi 谁	shì 是	nǐ de lǎoshī 你的老师?		
Who is your teacher?				

谁 can also be used at the end of a question as the object.

	Subject	Verb	Object	
	你	shì 是	shéi 谁?	
	Who are you	1?		
	你	zh <b>ǒ</b> o 找	shéi 谁?	
Whom are you looking for?				

When used at the end of a question, 谁 is sometimes equivalent to "whom" in English.

#### Numbers in Chinese

Chinese numbers use a decimal (base ten) system. There are characters for numbers zero through nine and larger numbers such as tens, hundreds, thousands, etc.

0	zero	líng 零
1	one	Αį
2	two	èr —
3	three	èr — sân —
4	four	sì U
5	five	wů Ŧi.
6	six	六
7	seven	qī Ł
8	eight	bā 八
9	nine	九
10	ten	shi +
100	one hundred	bǎl 百
1000	one thousand	qiān T
10000	ten thousand	wàn 万

The Chinese numbers for twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by placing the character for 10 after the characters for 2 to 9. For example, twenty is written as 二十 ("two ten"), thirty is written as 三十 ("three ten"), and forty as 四十 ("four ten").

Chinese numbers such as eleven, thirteen, twenty-one, thirty-two, etc are formed by adding the characters for 1 to 9 after the characters for 10 to 90. For example, eleven is written+- ("ten one"), twenty-one is =+- ("two ten one"), twenty-two is =+- ("two ten two") and thirty-two as =+- ("three ten two").

When a zero occurs in the number (except at the end), the character for zero (零) should be used. The number 201 is written二百零一 ("two hundred zero one").

## Asking about age using 多大

#### 多大 can be used to ask about someone's age.

Question	Answer
Nǐ duōdà 你多大?	wo érshíwǔ suí 我二十五岁。
How old are you?	I'm 25 years old.
Måkè de mèimeiduādà 马克的妹妹多大?	Tā shíbā suì 她十八岁。
How old is Mark's younger sister?	She's 18 years old.

你多大 can only be used to ask about the age of someone who is of the same generation as the speaker. or someone who is much younger. More polite forms are used to ask about the age of a senior person.

The verb 是 (be) is not needed before the age in the answer.

# 真/很+adjective

真 and 很 are adverbs indicating a high degree. 真 means "really" and 很 means "very". An adjective is often used together with 真 or 很 as the predicate.

Cubinet	Predicate			
Subject	Adverb	Adjective		
Tā	zhēn	gāo 高。		
他	真	高。		
He is really	tall.			
Tā	hěn	gāo 高。		
他	很	局。		
He is very to	all.			

The Chinese structure "Subject + 真/很 + adjective" has the same meaning as the English structure "Subject + be + really/very + adjective", but the Chinese equivalent of "be"(是) is not needed in the Chinese sentences.

#### For example,

Correct	Wrong
wǒ hěn gōoxìng 我很高兴。	w shi hèn gāoxìng 我是很高兴。×
I am very happy.	
Nǐ māma zhēn nlánqīng 你妈妈真 年轻!	Nǐ māma shì zhēn niánqīng 你妈妈是真 年轻! x
Your mum is really young!	

### Unit 5

#### duōshao 多少 Ouestion word

Although the question word 多少 is often translated as "how many" or "how much" in English, it can also be used to ask about telephone numbers and room numbers.

Subject	Verb	Question word
Nǐ de diànhuà hàomà 你的 电话 号码 What's your telephone n	是 是 number?	duōshao 多少?
Nǐ de fángjiān hào 你的房间号 What's your room numb	shì 是	duōshao 多少?

#### Word order of Chinese addresses

An address in Chinese is written as follows. It starts with the biggest geographical component and ends with the smallest, followed by the name of the recipient.

Country	Province	Cîty	Road	Number	Post code
Zhōngguó 中国	Guǎngdōng 广东 Shěng 省	Guǎngzhōu 广州 Shì 市	Huāyuán 花园 Lù 路	yibăilingèr 102 hào 号	510000

The word order of Chinese addresses is exactly the opposite of what is usually used in western countries, where the address starts with the name of the recipient and continues from the smallest geographical component to the biggest.

#### The pronunciation of the number "1"

"1" is often pronounced as "yāo" in telephone, room and bus numbers. If a number contains the same figure (including 0) two or more times in succession, each should be read separately. For example, 119 is read "yao vão jiữ", 1200 is read "vão èr líng líng".

Months	and da	tes			
2008	nián 年	1 2 3 ::	yuè 月	1 2 3	rì hào 日/号

In Chinese, a calendar year is expressed as four separate numbers followed by the word 年 (year), for example, 二〇一〇年, 一九五八年.

The names of the twelve months are expressed as cardinal numbers followed by the word 月 (month).

Yīyuè 一月	January	Gîyuè 七月	July
Èryuè 二月	February	Bãyuè 八月	August
Sǎnyuè 三月	March	Jiǔyuè 九月	September
Siyuè 四月	April	Shíyuè 十月	October
Wǔyuè 五月	May	Shíyīyuè 十一月	November
Liùyuè 六月	June	Shí' èryuè 十二月	December

Dates are expressed as cardinal numbers from 1 to 31 followed by the word 日 (day, written form) or 号 (day, spoken form). For example,

The word order for expressing dates in Chinese is year—month—day. For example,

Year	Month	Day
yī jiǔ qī bā nián 一九七八 年	Liùyuè 六月	九日
9 June 1978		
yī jiǔ sì wǔ nián 一九四五 年	Bāyuè 八月	èrshí' èr rì 二十二日
22 August 1945		

ı				Xīngq 星期	ī J		
	yī	èr	sān =	sì T	wů <u>Ti</u>	市六	rì tiān 日/天

The days of the week from Monday to Saturday are expressed as 星期 followed by the cardinal numbers from 1 to 6. Sunday is expressed as 星期日 (written form) or 星期天 (spoken form).

Xingqiyi 星期一	Monday	Xingqīwǔ 星期五	Friday
Xīngqī' èr 星期二	Tuesday	Xīngqīliù 星期六	Saturday
Xingqisān 星期三	Wednesday	Xīngqīrì tlān 星期日/天	Sunday
Xingqīsì 星期四	Thursday		

#### Sentences without verbs

In English, a sentence is incomplete without a verb, but Chinese sentences can sometimes go without a verb.

When expressing age, date, time and price, nouns (noun phrases) and numbers can function directly as nominal predicates after the subject without being preceded by the verb 是.

Subject	Predicate
Mǎkè 马克	shíjiǔ suì 十九岁。
Mark is 19 years old	
Jintiān 今天	Èryuè jiǔ hào 二月九号。
Today is 9 February	
Xiànzài 现在	sān diǎn 三点。
It is three o'clock no	ow.
Yī gōngjīn mǐ 一公斤米	sān kuài sì 三 埃四。
One kilogram of rice	e is three yuan and four jiao.

Note that in the English sentences the verb "be" is needed.

#### Making invitations using 请

In Chinese, to invite or tell someone to do something the verbs 造 and 叫 are used. 遺 means to invite someone to do something, usually in a polite manner, while III means to tell or ask someone to do something.

Person making invitation	Verb	Person receiving invitation	Event/Activity		
Wǒmen 我们	qǐng 请	tā 她	chî Zhōngcān 吃 中餐 。		
We invited	We invited her to have Chinese food.				
Wáng Yù 王玉	qǐng 请	Măkè 马克	qù tā jiā 去她家。		
Wang Yu in	Wang Yu invited Mark to her home.				
Lǎoshǐ 老师	jiào III	xuèsheng 学生	shuō Zhōngwén 说 中文。		
The teacher	The teacher told the students to speak Chinese.				

## Unit 7

#### Adverbial expressions of time

The adverbial expressions of time can be put either after or before the subject in a sentence.

For example, "I sleep at eleven." can be expressed as:

	Subject	Adverbial of time	Predicate
	Wŏ 我	shíyî diǎn 十一点	shuìjiào 睡觉。
or			
A	dverbial of ti	me Subject	Predicate
	Shíyī dlǎn 十一点	wŏ 我	shuìjiào 睡觉。

If there is more than one adverbial expression of time in a sentence, the time word denoting the biggest time unit usually goes first.

Adverbial of time	Subject	Predicate
Mingtiān wǎnshang qī diǎn 明天 晚上 七点	wŏmen 我们	zài diànyǐngyuàn 在 电影院 ménkǒu jiàn 门口 见。

We meet at the entrance of the cinema at seven tomorrow evening.

#### Different ways of telling the time

The ways of telling the time in Chinese and English are very similar.

When the minute hand points to "6" on a clock, we can use 三十分 or 半 which means "half an hour".

刻 means "a quarter of an hour".

When the minute hand points to a number larger than six, we can use the expression "... minutes to ... (the next hour)". For example, 2:45 can be expressed in three ways in Chinese:

liăng diăn sìshíwǔ fēn 1两点四十五分 liảng diặn săn kè

2两点三刻

chà yī kè sān diản

3 差一刻三点 (a quarter to three)

# Expressing future tense with 要

In Chinese, verbs do not change form to express tenses. The future tense in Chinese can be expressed by putting the verb 要 before the main verb. When 要 is used in front of another verb, it functions as a modal verb indicating future tense or the desire to do something, It is often used to express future plans.

Subject	Modal verb	Predicate		
wŏ 我	yào 要	qù yínhóng 去银行。		
I am going	to the bank.			
我	yào 要	chi Zhōngcān 吃 中餐 。		
I want to ea	I want to eat Chinese food.			
tā 她	yào 要	qù Rìběn 去日本。		
She is going	She is going to Japan.			

#### Measure words

The measure word  $\uparrow$  is used extensively for people or objects, both real and abstract.

People:	yī gè péngyou 一个 朋友	a friend
Real objects:	yī gè píngguǒ 一个 苹果	an apple
Abstract objects:	yī gè jiéguǒ 一个结果	a result

The measure word 件 is used for clothing, objects in general or abstract things.

Clothing:	yī jiàn máoyī 一件毛衣	a sweater
Objects in general:	yī jiàn lǐwù 一件礼物	a gift
Abstract things:	yī jlàn gōngzuò 一件 工作	a piece of work

The measure word 条 is used for long and narrow objects, including animals or body parts.

Long and narrow objects:	yī tiáo kùzi 一条 裤子 a pair of	trousers
Animals:	yī tláo yú 一条鱼 a fish	
Body parts:	yǐ tiáo tuǐ 一条腿 a leg	

The measure word 双 is used for things that come in pairs, including body parts.

Body parts:	yǐ shuāng shǒu 一 双 手	a pair of hands
Objects:	yī shuāng wàzi — 双 袜子	a pair of socks

#### èr liǎng Numerals 二/两

#### 二 is used:

- when counting, e.g.  $\overset{\text{y}\bar{\text{\i}}}{-}$  ,  $\overset{\text{e}r}{-}$  ,  $\overset{\text{san}}{=}$  ,  $\cdots$
- dì-èr gèrén • for expressing ordinal arrangement, e.g. 第二个人
- jiǔshí' èr • as the last digit of a numerical expression, e.g. 九十二 liǎng běn shū

两 is used for expressing quantity, e.g. 两本书

## Expressing past tense using T

The past tense in Chinese can be expressed by putting the particle  $\mathcal{T}$  after the main verb. Note that this structure is not the exact equivalent of past tense in English because it only indicates the completion of an action, and does not point out specifically that the action happened in the past.

Subject	Verb	Particle	Object
Wŏ	măl	le	yī běn shū
我	买	了	一本书。
I bought	a book.		
₩ŏ	chī	le	Zhōngcān
我	吃	了	中餐。
Late Chin	ese food.		

## Unit 9

#### yǒu Expressing existence using 有

The verb 有 has several meanings. The primary one means "have". For example,

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun phrase
地 She has	yóu 有 an elder bro	yī gè gēge 一个哥哥。 other.
Wŏ 我 I have m	yǒu 有 nany books.	hěn duổ shữ 很多书。

The subject of 有, the possessor, is usually a living creature, but it can also be an inanimate object. For example,

Shuǐ li yǒu hẻn duō yú 水里有很多鱼。There are many fish in the water.

有 indicates existence if the subject is a nominal expression denoting location or time. The object of 有 is the person or thing concerned.

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun phrase		
Fùjin 附近	yǒu 有	chāoshì 超市。		
There is a sup	permarket nearby.			
Fángzi lì 房子里	yǒu 有	rén 人。		
There is someone in the house.				
Mingtian 明天				
There is a football match tomorrow.				

The negative form of 有 is 没有. For example,

Fùjìn mélyǒu chāoshì

附近 没有 超市 。 There is no supermarket nearby.

#### yǒu méiyǒu Asking questions using 有 没有

没有 is the negative form of the verb 有, and we can use the phrase 有没有 in affirmative-negative questions. For example,

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun	
Nǐ 你	yǒu méiyǒu 有 没有	qián 钱?	
Do you hav	Do you have any money?		
Fángzi li 房子里	yǒu méiyǒu 有没有	rén 人?	
Is there anybody in the house?			

## Expressing locations with the verb 在

The word 在 has many different uses. It can be used as a verb to indicate the location of an object or a person, meaning "at/in". To negate, just put the negation word 不 before the verb 在.

Subject	Predicate		
Subject	Adverb	Verb	Noun phrase
Xǐshǒujiān 洗手间		zài shūdiàn qiánbian 在 书店 前边。	
The tollet is in front of the bookshop.			
Ditiézhàn 地铁站	bù 不	zài 在	gōngyuán de nánbian 公园 的南边。
The subway station is not to the south of the park.			

#### Unit 10

#### hái

#### Alternative questions with 还是

An alternative question is formed by linking two alternative options with the conjunction 还是. The respondent is expected to choose one or the other option. For example,

Nǐ xǐhuan Zhōngguó háishi xǐhuan Měiguó 你喜欢中国还是喜欢美国? Do you like China or the US?

Wǒ xǐhuan Zhōngguó 我喜欢中国。

Hike China.

Wômen zuò dìtiě qù háishi zuò chūzūchē qù 我们坐地铁去还是坐出租车去? Shall we go by subway or by taxi? women zuò ditiě qù 我们坐地铁去。 We'll go by subway.

The verb in the second option may be omitted if the same verb is used in both options.

Wômen chỉ Zhôngcān háishì chỉ Hánguócòl 我们吃中餐还是(吃)韩国菜? Shall we eat Chinese food or Korean food?

#### hǎoma Questions ending with 好吗

好吗 is used after stating an idea or suggestion. Questions ending with 好吗 are used to ask for someone's opinion.

Wömen qù chî Zhōngcōn 我们去吃中餐,	hǎoma 好吗?	
We will go and have Chinese food, OK?		
Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù hǎoma 我们坐地铁去, 好吗?		
We go there by subway, OK?		

If the respondent agrees to the suggestion, he may say 好 or 好吧. But he can also use "······吧" to indicate an alternative suggestion, which is used here to soften the tone of the answer. For example,

Wômen qù chĩ Zhōngcōn hảo ma 我们去吃 中餐,好吗? We go to have Chinese food, OK?

Hǎo Hǎo ba 好。/好吧。(showing agreement) All right.

Women qù chī Hánguócòi ba 我们去吃韩国菜吧。(giving an altemative suggestion) Let's go and have Korean food.

## Expressing superlatives with

最 is an adverb that can be used before an adjective, a verb or a location word to indicate the superlative degree. For example,

zuìhǎo 最好	the best
zuì xǐhuan 最喜欢	like the best
zuì nánbian 最南边	the very south

#### ba

#### Using the particle III.

吧 can be used at the end of a sentence to express different moods, including command, approval, request and suggestion.

Command	Mǎshàng qù shàngxué ba 马上去上学吧! Go to school immediately!
Approval	Wôrnen jiù zhèyàng zuò ba 我们就 这样 做吧。 Let's do it this way.
Request	Qǐng nǐ zǒu bo 请你走吧。 Please go away.
Suggestion	Xiànzài bù zǎo le wǒmen zǒu ba 现在不早了,我们走吧。 It's getting late now, let's go.

### Unit 11

#### kěyǐ huì Using modal verbs 可以 / 会

The modal verb 可以 is used before another verb to express ability or permission.

When 可以 indicates the ability to do something, it can be translated into English as "can" or "be able to".

wǒ kěyǐ shuō Yīngyǔ 我可以说英语。	I can speak English.
Tā kěyǐ chī wǔ wǎn fàn 他可以吃五碗饭。	He can eat five bowls of rice.

When 可以 indicates permission, it can be translated into English as "may" or "be allowed to".

Nǐ kēyǐ jìnlái 你可以进来。	You may come in.
Nǐ kěyǐ zǒu le 你可以走了。	You may leave now.

The modal verb 会 precedes another verb to indicate the ability to do something.

Tā huì shuō Hànyǔ 她会说汉语。	She can speak Chinese.
tā huì yóuyǒng 他会游泳。	He can swim.

While both 可以 and 会 can be used to mean the ability to do something, 可以 usually expresses general and physical capability, and 会 emphasizes skills acquired through learning and practice.

#### Pivotal sentences

A pivotal sentence has two verbs, the object of the first verb functioning at the same time as the subject of the second verb. For example,

Lǎoshī xīwàng wǒmen xué Zhōngwén 老师希望我们学中文。 Wǒ qǐng nǐ chīfàn 我请你吃饭。

The first objects 我们 and 你 function as pivots of the above sentences because each of them connects the first half of the sentence with the second.

## Talking about past actions with 过

过 is used after verbs to indicate that something happened in the past.

Mčkė qùguo Zhōngguó 马克去过 中国。 Mark has been to China. Annà chīguo Rìběncài 安娜吃过日本菜。 Anna has eaten Japanese food.

In a negative sentence, 没(有)is used before the main verb to indicate that something has not happened.

wo méi yǒu kànguo zhè běn shū 我没(有)看过这本书。I have not read this book.

## Unit 12

#### huòzhě háishi Expressing alternatives using 或者 / 还是

The conjunctions 或者 and 还是 mean "or". They are used to connect clauses suggesting two alternatives or possibilities.

或者 can only be used in declarative sentences, whereas 还是 is mainly used in questions.

我	xlǎng qù Běijīng	huòzhě	Shànghǎi	
	想去北京	或者	上海。	
I want	to go to Beijing or Sha	anghai.		
Women	dăsuan sān diǎn	huòzhě	sān diễn bản qù	
我们	打算三点	或者	三点半去。	
We pla	n to go at three or hal	f past thre	e.	
Nǐ	xiǎng xué jīngjù	háishi	zhōngguó gōngfu	
你	想 学京剧	还是	中国 功夫?	
Do you want to learn Beijing opera or Chinese kung fu?				
你	dǎsuan mǎi dàyī	hóishi	qúnzi	
	打算买大衣	还是	裙子?	
Do you plan to buy a coat or a skirt?				

#### měi dōu Expressing regular events with 每 ······都······

The word 每 means "every". It is usually used before numerals and measure words to form phrases like 每 个……,每件……. If the numeral is - (one), it is often dropped, for example, 每 (-) 个……, 每 (-) 件…… (every …).

每 can be used to express specific time reference if it is followed by nouns denoting time, like 年 (year), 月 (month), 天 (day). In this case, the measure word can be omitted.

měl 每	Numeral	Measure word	Nouns denoting time	
měi 每	γ <sub>1</sub> ( <u>···</u> )		nián 年	every year
měi 每	liàng 两		nián 年	every other year
měl 每	yĭ ( <u>···</u> )	gè (个)	yuè 月	every month
měi 每	liǎng 两	gè ↑	yuè 月	every other month
měi 每	yĭ ( <u></u> )		tiān 天	every day
měi 每	llǎng 两		tiān 天	every other day

A sentence containing 每 usually requires the adverb 都, which comes immediately before the verb, to fully express the sense of "wholeness". Sentences containing this "每……都……" structure have two kinds of word order. The time phrase "每……" can be put either before or after the subject.

tā	měi gè jiàqī	dōu huí jlā							
他	每个假期	都回家。							
Měi gè jiàqī	tā	dōu huí jlō							
每个假期	他	都回家。							
He goes home every holiday.									
Mǎkè	měl gè zhōumò	dōu qù páshān							
马克	每个周末	都去爬山。							
Měi gè zhōumò	Mǎkè	dōu qù páshān							
每个周末	马克	都去爬山。							
Mark goes climbi	ng every weekend								

## **Picture captions**

Unit 1 p17 The Great Wall at Badaling, near Beijing / p20 Martial artists practise kung fu / p23 Cyclists in Beijing / pp24–25 (background) Li River valley, Yangshuo, Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region

Unit 2 p27 A traditional tea ceremony at a resort near Kunming, Yunnan / p30 Traditional clothes on display in Longji, Guangxi / p33 Folk dance on Tian'anmen Square, Beijing / pp34–35 (background) Sunrise on Huangshan (Yellow Mountain), Anhui

Unit 3 p37 Cormorant fisherman on the Li river, Guilin / p40 Policewomen in uniform / p42 Ploughing a terraced rice paddy, Qingkou, Yuanyang, Yunnan / pp44–45 (background) Fields around Jinjiling (Golden Rooster Hill), Luoping County, Yunnan

Unit 4 p47 Rollerskater on the Bund, Shanghai / p50 Bruce Lee statue, Avenue of Stars, Tsim Sha Tsui, Hong Kong / p52 Farmhouse near Guilin / pp54–55 (background) The karst landscape around Guilin

Review 1 p60 The Forbidden City, Beliling

Unit 5 p61 Girl talking on public telephone, Beijing / pp62–63 Doorway of traditional Chinese architecture Style, Beijing / p66 A traditional Chinese courtyard / pp68–69 (background) Sunset by Leifeng Hill, Xihu (West Lake), Hangzhou, Zhejlang

Unit 6 p71 Children play with firecrackers on Lunar New Year / p76 Traditional decorative knotwork / p77 Decorative characters for Spring Festival / pp78–79 (background) The yellow earth landscape of northwest China

Unit 7 p81 Commuters travel by bicycle in Kunming, Yunnan / p86 Zhuang minority woman in Longji, Gullin, Guangxi / p88–89 (background) Musical fountain at Big Wild Goose Pagoda, Xi'an

Unit 8 p91 Ceramics, chopsticks and other decorative wares at a Beijing market / p96 Calligraphy supplies and artwork, Beijing / pp98–99 (background) Yalong Bay, Hainan

Review 2 p104 Tangyue memorial archway, Anhui

Unit 9 p105 Pudong district, Shanghai, with the Oriental Pearl Tower / pp110–111 Busy commute of cars at night / pp112–113 (background) Hukou Waterfall, the Yellow River, Ji County, Shaanxi

Unit 10 p115 Shanghai Maglev Train, the world's fastest passenger train / pp122–123 (background) Sanya Bay, Hainan

Unit 11 p125 Woman dancing in a Shanghai linong alleyway neighbourhood / p130 Decorated dragon boat for Qingming festival / pp132–133 (background) Sky lantern festival, Pingxi, Taiwan

Unit 12 p135 Traditional Chinese theatre cast member, Singapore / p141 Rickshaw drivers wait for customers / pp142–143 (background) Cattle ranching in Habahe (Qaba) County, Xinjiang

Review 3 p148 Ta'er Temple, Xining, Qinghai

Pair work activities pp152–153 Hong Kong harbour tourist cruise boat / p154 Night market in Snake Alley, Wanhua district, Taipei / p155 Bamboo forest / 158–159 Shaolin monk show, Shanghai / p160 Vegetable sellers at market / p161 Beijing opera performer in traditional make-up

# Pinyin pronunciation guide

Sound	Words	Example 1	Example 2
Initials			
b	bed	bō 玻	bēi 杯
n	pin	põ	pāl
р	pin	坡 mō	拍 mái
m	moon	摸	埋
f	fun	fó 佛	fā 发
d	day	dé	dā
		得 tè	搭 tā
t	tin	特	他
n	nose	ne 呢	nà 纳
1	long	lè	lā
		勒 gē	拉 gāl
g	good	哥	gāl 该
k	kind	kē 科	kði 开
h	hat	hē 喝	hā 哈
		jĩ	jlāo
j	jug	基 qi	交
q		欺	qià 恰
X		xī 希	xiāo 消
	la ut al ara	zhī	zhā
zh	bridge	知 chī	渣 chá
ch	chin	吃	茶
sh	shirt	shī 诗	shā
	reduce	rì	rén
r		El zī	人 20
Z	"ds" in reads	资	杂
С	"ts" in hats	cí 雌	cā 擦
S	say	sî	sè
	Juy	思	色
Finals	192	ā	bā
a	far	斯可	八
0	saw	wō 喔	mò
е	her	é 鹅	chē 车
	bee	yī	bĭ
i		衣 wū	比 wū
u	rude	乌	屋
ü	German Fühlen	yū 迁	nǔ 女
ai	eye	āi	bál
		哀 ēi	É féi
ei	eight	欸	肥
ao	cow	áo 敖	bāo 包
ou	oh	ōu	pōu
		欧 ān	剖 bān
an	enhance	安	班
	taken	ēn	běn

ang	gang	áng 昂	bāng 邦
eng	sung	hēng 字	bēng 崩
		_ ·	
ong	German Lunge	hōng	dōng
Ong	German Lange	轰	东
ia	yard	ya	xíà
10	yalu	呀	夏
1-		γē	blé
ie	yes	耶	别
		γᾶο	jiāo
iao	meow	腰	交
		yōu	diū
iu	yoga	优	丢
1		yān	plān
ian	yen	烟	偏
		yin	bīn
in	in	因	宾
	1		, ,
iang	e + yang	yāng	niáng
	v . /s	央	娘
ing	sing	ying	bĭng
ilig	airig	英	丙
	Carrena library	yōng	qlóng
iong	German Jünger	雍	穷
		wā	guã
ua	guano	蛙	瓜
-		wō	duō
uo	wall	篱	多
-		wāi	guài
uai	why	歪	怪
		wēi	wéi
uei		威	围
			duăn III
uan	wan	wan 弯	短
un	won	wen	kūn
dii	***************************************	温	昆
Hand	u + ongoing	wāng	guðing
uang	u + ongoing	汪	光
		weng	wèng
ueng		翁	瓮
	n1-	γuā	quē
űe	ü + eh	约	缺
100		yuān	xuān
üan	ü+an	冤	宣
		γūn	gún
ün	German grün	晕	群
		于	1/T

# Combinations of pinyin initials and simple finals

simple finals Initials	0	0	0	0	0	0
b	ba	bo		bi	bu	
Р	pa	po		pi	pu	
m	ma	mo	me	mi	mu	
f	fa	fo			fu	
d	da		de	di	du	
t	ta		te	ti	tu	
n	na		ne	ni	nu	nü
1	la		le	-11	lu	lü
g	ga		ge		gu	
k	ka		ke		ku	
h	ha		he		hu	
j				ji		jü (ju)
q				gi		qü (qu)
х				χi		xü (xu)

## **English translations**

### Unit 1

## Vocabulary and listening

Mark: Hello! Wang Yu: Hello!

Mark: May I ask what your name is?
Wang Yu: I'm Wang Yu. How about you?

Mark: I'm Mark, Mark Johnson. Nice to meet you,

Miss Yu.

Wang Yu: Sorry, my family name is Wang.

### Reading and writing

I'm Mark Johnson. My Chinese name is Måkè. Pleased to meet you all.

Hi, everybody! I'm Anna Pollard. My Chinese name is Ānnà. Very happy to meet you all.

Hello! I am Steve Brown. My Chinese name is Shǐdìfū.

#### Unit 2

## Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Good morning!
Wang Yu: Good morning!
Steve: Are you Japanese?
Wang Yu: No, I am not Japanese.
Steve: Where are you from?

Wang Yu: I'm Chinese. Which country are you from?

Steve: I'm British.

Wang Yu: Do you live in London? Steve: No, I live in Beijing.

## Reading and writing

Do you know them?

They are Hollywood stars, but they are not Americans. Hayden Christensen is Canadian. Charlize Theron is South African. Russell Crowe is from New Zealand. Nicole Kidman is from Sydney, Australia. Cate Blanchett is from Melbourne, Australia.

#### Unit 3

## Wocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Is she your younger sister?

Mark: Yes, she is my younger sister. This is my

younger brother.

Yeong-min: Are your younger sister and younger

brother students too?

Mark: My younger brother is a student, but my

younger sister is a journalist.

Anna: What does your father do?

Mark: He is a doctor.

Anna: Where does your mother work?

Mark: She works at a hospital. My father and

mother are both doctors.

## Reading and writing

Steve:

Hello!

This is a photo of my family. He is my father. She is my mother. They both work at a hospital. They're both doctors. This is my elder brother, he works at a school. He is a teacher. This is my elder sister. She is a journalist. This is me. I'm a student.

#### Unit 4

## Vocabulary and listening

Anna: Who is he? He's Yao Ming, isn't he?

Wang Yu: Yes.

Anna: Where is he from?

Wang Yu: Shanghai, but now he lives in the US.

Anna: How old is he? Thirty-five years old?

Wang Yu: I don't know.
Anna: He's so tall!

Wang Yu: And also very handsome, and very cool!

He is my favourite basketball player!

## Reading and writing

Name: Wang Yu Age: 20 years old

Place of birth: Beijing Nationality: Chinese

Email: wangyu0521@DC.com Favourite animal: panda—cute!

Favourite athlete: Yao Ming—very handsome!

Favourite actor: Bruce Lee—really cool!

## Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Steve, is your phone number 55546998?

**Steve:** Yes, this is my home phone number. **Yeong-min:** What's your mobile phone number?

Steve: My mobile phone number is

12081345761.

Yeong-min: Where do you live?

Steve: I live at 19 Park Road.

Yeong-min: What's your email address?

Steve: steve@DC.com.

### Reading and writing

#### Inhox

This is my new address and phone number: Room 506, Student Dormitory, 23 University Road. You can call me on the phone.

Sender: Mark 16628958763

#### Inbox

Received. Thanks! Does Anna also live on University

Road?

Sender: Wang Yu 11872356725

#### Inbox

No, she lives on Park Road.

Sender: Mark 16628958763

### Unit 6

## Vocabulary and listening

Mark: Yeong-min, 9 February is Wang Yu's

birthday.

Yeong-min: Really? What date is it today?

Mark: Today is 5 February.

Yeong-min: What day of the week is the ninth?

Mark: Sunday. We'll invite her to have a meal.

How about that?

Yeong-min: OK. Where shall we go?

Mark: How about "Mama's Kitchen"? The

Chinese food there is very tasty.

Yeong-min: OK, no problem.

### Reading and writing

3-9 June

Sunday

9:00~12:00 a.m. play basketball

6:00~9:00 p.m. meet Wang Yu's elder brother

Monday

9:00~12:00 a.m. read books 3:00~6:00 p.m. go to work

Tuesday

12:00~3:00 p.m. study Chinese

6:00~9:00 p.m. eat Chinese food with Mark

Wednesday

9:00~12:00 a.m. go to hospital

3:00~6:00 p.m. read books

Thursday

9:00~12:00 a.m. meet my teacher

3:00~6:00 p.m. go to work

Friday

12:00~3:00 p.m. study Chinese

6:00~9:00 p.m. go to Steve's birthday party

Saturday

9:00~12:00 a.m. meet Mark

3:00~6:00 p.m. go to Wang Yu's new home

#### Unit 7

## Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Wang Yu, do you have some free time this

weekend?

Wang Yu: I'm going to see my grandpa on Sunday.

Steve: What are your plans for Saturday?

Wang Yu: I don't have any.

Steve: Let's go and see a movie together, OK?

Wang Yu: What movie?

**Steve:** A Chinese film. The film's title is "Family".

Wang Yu: OK. What time?

Steve: The movie starts at eight thirty. How about

we meet at the entrance of the cinema at

eight?

Wang Yu: Great. I want to invite my friend, too, is that

OK?

Steve: No problem. See you at eight tomorrow

evening!

### Reading and writing

Weekend planner									
Saturday		Things to do							
Morning	8: 45	study English							
Noon	12: 30	eat Japanese food with friends							
Afternoon	3: 15	go jogging with brother							
Evening	8: 00	see a movie with Steve, meet							
		at the entrance of the cinema							
Reminder	write Mark	an email							
_									
Cumdon		Thinac to do							
Sunday		Things to do							
Sunday Morning	10: 15	learn singing							
	10: 15 12: 00								
Morning	12:00	learn singing							
Morning Noon	12:00	learn singing see grandpa and grandma							
Morning Noon Afternoon	12: 00 4: 45	learn singing see grandpa and grandma go to university to exercise							
Morning Noon Afternoon Evening	12: 00 4: 45 6: 00 8: 00	learn singing see grandpa and grandma go to university to exercise eat dinner at home							

#### Unit 8

## Vocabulary and listening

Shop assistant: May I ask, what kind of clothes do you

want to buy?

Anna: I want to buy a skirt.

Shop assistant: Please come this way ... How about

this one?

Anna: It's too red!

Shop assistant: Is this one all right?

Anna: I don't like blue. Is there a black one?

Shop assistant: How about this black one?

Anna: It doesn't look too good.

Shop assistant: Try this one.

Anna: This one is not bad. How much is it?

Shop assistant: Two hundred and seventy-nine yuan.

Anna: Can you make it cheaper?

Shop assistant: Sorry, this price is the lowest.

Anna: Wang Yu, is this expensive?

Wang Yu: It's not expensive. Buy this one

then.

Anna: OK. Here is the money.

Shop assistant: Thank you.

### Reading and writing

#### **Beijing Life**

Thursday 2 July

This is my favourite bookshop in Beijing. I like

reading!

This clothing market is far away, but the prices are low. On Sunday I bought a pair of trousers for twenty *yuan*, very cheap. I bought my elder brother a T-shirt. He likes both black and white T-shirts.

This is a famous shopping centre called the Village. Last month I bought a pair of shoes and a coat here. Every weekend, there are a lot of people here.

This is me and Xiaoxiao. Xiaoxiao is a shop assistant at the supermarket. I come here to buy things every Sunday morning.

#### Unit 9

## Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Where does Anna live?
Yeong-min: Number 34, Park Road.
Steve: How do we get there?
Yeong-min: Let's ask a passerby.

Yeong-min: Excuse me, is this Park Road?

Passerby: No. Park Road is behind the post

office.

Yeong-min: How do we get there?

Passerby: Head south.

Yeong-min: Is it far from here?

Passerby: Not far.

Steve: Excuse me, is this Park Road?

Passerby: That's right.

Yeong-min: Is there a building number 34 here?

Passerby: Yes, it's near the bank, in front of a

bookshop. Go straight ahead for about

five minutes.

### Reading and writing

#### 1 Flat for rent

18 University Road, second floor. There are three rooms. The flat is very near the university. There is a student dorm to the east, a subway station to the west and a supermarket to the north. There is a cinema nearby. Transport and shopping are both very convenient.

¥4200/month Telephone: 25489076

Contact Miss Zhao

#### 2 Flat for rent

Very cheap!

98 Nanjing Road, eighth floor, 120 square metres. There are a lot of bookshops and cheap restaurants nearby. There is a park to the east and a shopping centre to the west.

¥3500/month Telephone: 69812047

Contact Mr. Ma

#### Unit 10

## Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Steve, where did you buy that T-shirt? It

doesn't look too nice!

Steve: Really? This is my favourite T-shirt. I like

its colour.

Yeong-min: You need some new clothes. Let's go to

the shopping centre together and buy

some.

Steve: Is it in Sanlitun?

Yeong-min: Yes.

Steve: How do we go there? By bus or by taxi?

Yeong-min: Let's take the subway. The subway is

more convenient.

Steve: OK.

Yeong-min: Shall we go on Saturday or Sunday?

Steve: Saturday.

Yeong-min: OK, And then we'll go for dinner, OK?

Steve: Of course! What restaurants are there?

Yeong-min: There are Italian restaurants and also

Japanese restaurants.

Steve: Let's eat Italian food.

Yeong-min: Great. Italian food is my favourite!

### Reading and writing

	Travel plans
Time of travel	Summer holiday
1	(the first week of the holiday)
Where to go	Guilin
How to go	by train (convenient, cheap)
People to invite	Steve and Mark
What to do	river cruise, shopping, climbing,
	photography, visiting famous scenic sites

#### Unit 11

## Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Wang Yu, what kind of sports do you

like?

Wang Yu: I like basketball, and football too.

Steve: Do you want to watch a football match

next month?

Wang Yu: Of course! What teams are playing?

Steve: China and England, at the stadium near

our university.

Wang Yu: OK, I'll go with you. I hope China win!

Steve: | hope England win!

Wang Yu: Do you want to do some exercise this

weekend?

Steve: What kind of exercise?

Wang Yu: Let's play tennis, shall we?

Steve: Sorry, I don't know how to play tennis,

but I can dance. Let's go dancing

together.

Wang Yu: I don't like dancing, and I haven't learnt

how.

Steve: How about we go swimming?

Wang Yu: OK! Swimming is my favourite.

Steve: Let's go tomorrow morning, is that OK?

Wang Yu: I jog in the morning. Let's go in the

afternoon.

Steve: OK. See you tomorrow.

### Reading and writing

Students' sport and recreation questionnaire Name: Mark Age: 19 Gender: male Nationality: Australian What sports can you do? play football ✓ surfing **V** swim skiing ✓ play basketball diving play table tennis bungee jump others How many hours' exercise do you do every week? ▼ 5-10 1-2 3-4 When do you exercise? Five o'clock every afternoon. Who do you exercise with? Together with friends. Where do you exercise? school ✓ sports ground ☐ home

### Unit 12

## Vocabulary and listening

Anna: Yeong-min, Steve, what are you

planning to do for the holidays?

Yeong-min: Every holiday I go travelling.

Steve: I want to travel, too, or maybe go

home.

Anna: Don't go home. It's too far away. Let's

travel together, OK?

Steve: Where should we go? Singapore or

Hong Kong?

Yeong-min: Hong Kong, of course. I like Hong Kong.

Anna: Singapore is too far away. Let's go to

Hong Kong. There we can go shopping,

and we can go to a concert.

Steve: Let's go to Hong Kong, then.

Yeong-min: How do we get there? By air or by train?

Anna: Of course by air. The plane is very

convenient.

Yeong-min: After we come back to Beijing, we can

go to see some Beijing opera.

Steve: Great, I really like watching Beijing

opera.

## Reading and writing

#### Bob

I plan to travel to China for this year's holiday. There are many fun places in China. But I can only go to one place. My friends said that both Shanghai and Beijing are good. What do you think?

#### Wang Yu

Go to Beijing. There are two flights from Britain to Beijing every day, which is very convenient.

#### Peter

Xi'an is my favourite place. I think you should go to Xi'an. You can visit the Terracotta Warriors. Wang Yu, do you think Bob should go to Xi'an?

#### **Wang Yu**

Xi'an is a very pretty city that has thousands of years of history.

#### Bob

Good idea. I like history. Xi'an is not bad. How do I get to Xi'an?

#### **Wang Yu**

You can take a plane.

# **Vocabulary list**

	WORD	PINVIN	ART OF PEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINIVINI	ART OF	MEANING	UNIT
Α	埃及	Āijí	n.	Egypt	2	吃饭	chīfàn	v.	have a meal	6
	矮	ăi	adj.	short (helght)	4	冲浪	chōnglàng	V.	surf	11
	澳大 利亚	Àodàlìyà	n.	Australia	2	出生地	chūshēngdì	n.	place of birth	4
В	爸爸	bàba	n.	father	3	出租	chūzū	v.	rent out, lease	9
	DE.	ba	particle	(for making suggestions)	8	出租车	chūzūchē	n.	taxi	10
	百	băi	num.	hundred	8	厨房	chúfáng	n.	kitchen	6
	白色	báisè	n.	white	8	厨师	chúshī	n.	chef	3
	班	bān	measure word		12	船	chuán	n.	boat	10
	半	bàn	num.	half (an hour)	7	从	cóng	prep.	from	12
	棒球	bàngqiú	n.	baseball	11	D 扣	dă	V.	play (ball game with hands)	6
	北边	běibian	n.	north	9	打电话	dă diànhuà		make a phone call	5
	北京	Běijīng	n.	Beijing	2	打工	dăgōng	V.	do part-time work	12
	蹦极	bèngjí	v.	bungee jump	11	打算	dăsuan	v.	plan	12
	比赛	bĭsài	n.	match, competition	11	大家	dàjiā	pron.	everybody	1
	别	bié	adv.	do not	12	大学	dàxué	n.	university	5
	兵马俑	Bīngmäyŏng	n.	Terracotta Warriors	12	大衣	dàyī	n.	coat	8
	博客	bókè	n.	blog	7	但是	dànshì	conj.	but	3
	不	bù	adv.	not, no	2	当然	dāngrán	adv.	of course	10
	不错	bùcuò	adj.	not bad	8	导游	dǎoyóu	n.	tour guide	3
C	菜	cài	n.	food, dish	7	到	dào	V.	get to (a place),	7
	餐	cān	n.	cuisine, meal	6	德国	Déguó	n.	Germany	2
	参观	cānguān	V.	visit (a place)	10		de	structura		3
	餐厅	canting	n.	restaurant	10	的		particle		
		cháng	adj.	long	4	弟弟	dìdl	n.	younger brother	3
	唱歌	chànggē	V.	sing a song	7	地方	dìfang	n.	place	12
	超市	chāoshì	n.	supermarket	8		dìtiězhàn	n.	subway station	9
	衬衫	chènshān	n.	shirt	8	地址	dìzhĭ	n.	address	5
	城市	chéngshì	n.	city	12	第一个	dì-yī gè		the first	10
	吃	chī	V.	eat	6 +	* The words	in colour are n	ot target w	ords for the units.	

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF	MEANING	UNIT		WORD	DINIVINI	PART OF	MEANING	UNIT
点	diǎn	speech n.	o'clock	7		分	fēn	n.	minute	7
电话	diànhuà	n.	telephone	5		分钟	fēnzhōng	n.	minute	9
电视	diànshì	n.	television	7		服务员	fúwùyuán	n.	waiter, waitress	3
电影	diànyĭng	n.	movie, film	7		服装市场	fúzhuāng	п.	clothes market	8
电影	完 diànyǐngy	uàn <i>n.</i>	cinema	7		<b>叶</b> 场	shìcháng fùjìn	n./adj.	vicinity, nearby	9
电子邮件	diànzĭ yóujiàn	n.	email	7	G		gănlănqiú	n.	rugby	11
电子箱	diànzi yóuxlāng	n.	email box/address	4		高	gāo	adj.	tall	4
东边	döngbian	n.	east	9		高兴	gāoxìng	adj.	glad, happy	1
东西	dōngxi	n.	thing	8		哥哥	gēge	n.	elder brother	3
动物	dòngwù	n.	animal	4		个子	gèzi	n.	(person) height	4
都。	dōu	adv.	both, all	3		给	gěi	v./prep.	give, to	5
短	duăn	adj.	short (length)	4		跟	gēn	prep.	with	6
短裤	duănkù	n.	shorts	8		工程师	göngchéngsl	nī <i>m</i> .	engineer	3
短信	duănxìn	n.	message	5		工作	gōngzuò	n./v.	work, job	3
队	duì	n.	team	11		公共	gōnggòng gìchē	n.	bus	10
对	duì	adj.	right, correct	9					block of flats, apartment	5
对不	起 duìbuqǐ		sorry	1		公寓	gōngyù	n.	building	,
多大	duō dà		how old	5		公园	göngyuán	n.	park	5
多少	duōshao	pron.	what, how many/ much	5		购物中心	gòuwù zhōngxīn	n.	shopping centre	8
三二月	Ėryuè	n.	February	6		广州	Guắngzhōu	n.	Guangzhou	12
■ 发件	人 fājiànrén	n.	sender	5		贵	guì	adj.	expensive	8
发送	fāsòng	V.	send	5		桂林	Guìlín	n.	Guilin	10
法国	Făguó	n.	France	2		国	guó	n.	country	2
饭馆	fànguặn	n.	restaurant	9		国籍	guójí	n.	nationality	4
方便	fāngbiàn	adj.	convenient	9		过	guo		indicator of past actions	11
房间	fángjiān	n.	room	5	Н	还是	háishi	conj.	or (in a question)	10
房子		n.	flat, house	9		韩国	Hánguó	n.	Korea	2
飞机		n.	aeroplane	12		好	hắo	adj.	good, OK	1
	场 fēijīchǎng	n.	airport	10		好吃	hǎochī	adj.	tasty	б

			V. 0.5							
	WORD	PINIVINI	ART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINIVINI	ART OF PEECH	MEANING	UNIT
	好看	hăokàn	adj.	good-looking	8	件	jiàn	measure word	item, piece	8
	好莱坞	Hăoláiwū	n.	Hollywood	2	见面	jiànmiàn	v.	meet up	6
	好玩	hǎowán	adj.	fun	12	健身房	jiànshēnfáng	п.	gymnasium	9
	号	hào	n.	number, date (spoken)	5	交通	jiāotōng	п.	transportation	9
	号码	hàomă	n.	number, code	5	PI	jiào	V.	be called	1
	和	hé	сопј.	and	3	街	jiē	n.	street	5
	黑色	hēlsè	n.	black	8					
	很	hěn	adv.	very	1	姐姐	jiějie	n.	elder sister	3
	很多	hěnduố	adj.	a lot of	8	今年	jīnnián	n.	this year	12
	红	hóng	adj.	red	8	今天	jīntiān	n.	today	6
	后边	hòubian	n.	back	9	近	jìn	adj.	near	9
	护士	hùshi	n.	nurse	3	京剧	jīngjù	n.	Beijing opera	12
	滑雪	huáxuě	v.	ski	11	警察局	jingchájú	n.	police station	9
	黄色	huángsè	n.	yellow	8	景点	jingdian	n.	scenic site	10
	回	huí	v.	go back	12	九月	Jiǔyuè	n.	September	6
	会	huì	v.	can, be able to	11	觉得	juéde	V.	think, feel	12
	火车	huŏchē	n.	train	10	咖啡店	kāfēidiàn	n.	café	9
	火车站	huŏchēzhàn	n.	railway station	10	开始	kāishĭ	V.	start	7
	或者	huòzhě	conj.	or (in a statement)	12	看	kàn	V.	read, see	6
J	几	jĭ	pron.	how many	6	刻	kè	n.	quarter (of an hour)	7
	几点	jĭdiăn		what time	7	可爱	kě' ài	adj.	cute	4
	计划	jìhuà	n.	plan	7	可以	kěyĭ	V.	may, can	5
	记者	jìzhě	n.	journalist	3	肯尼亚		n.	Kenya	2
	家	jiā	n.	family, home	3	酷	kù	adj.	cool	4
	加拿大	Jiānádà	n.	Canada	2	裤子	kùzī	n. measure	currency unit of	8
		jíāyóuzhàn	n.	petrol station	10	块	kuài	word	China (yuan)	8
		jiàqī	n.	holiday	10	来	lái	V.	come	8
		jiàqian	П.	price	8	篮球	lánqìú	n.	basketball	4
						蓝色	lánsè	n.	blue	8
	见	jiàn	V.	see, meet	7	老	lắo	adj.	old	4

			PART OF			_		PART OF		
	WORD	DINIVINI	SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
	老师	lăoshī	n.	teacher	3	明天	míngtiān	n.	tomorrow	7
	离	lí	v.	away from	9	明星	mingxīng	n.	celebrity	2
	理发师	lĭfàshī	n.	barber, hairdresser	3	名字	míngzi	n.	name	1
	历史	lìshĭ	n.	history	12	墨尔本	Mò'ěrběn	n.	Melbourne	2
	联系	liánxì	v./π.	contact	9	墨西哥	Mòxīgē	n.	Mexico	2
						N哪	nă	pron.	which	2
		liányīqún	n.	one-piece dress	8	哪里	năli	pron.	where	2
	了	le	particle		7	哪儿	năr	pron.	where	9
	六月	Liùyuè	n.	June	6	那里	nàli	pron.	there	6
	楼	lóu	n.	building, storey	9	那么	nàme	conj.	then, so	12
	路	lù	n.	road	5	奶奶	năinai	n.	grandmother	7
	路人	lùrén	n.	passerby	9	男	nán	n.	male	11
	旅馆	lŭguăn	n.	hotel	9	南边	nánbian	n.	south	9
	旅行	lűxíng	v./n.	travel	10	南非	Nánfēi	n.	South Africa	2
	绿色	lůsè	n.	green	8	南京	Nánjīng	n.	Nanjing	9
	律师	lùshī	n.	lawyer	3	呢	ne	particle	(used to ask questions)	1
	伦敦	Lúndūn	n.	London	2	你	nĭ	pron.	you	1
M	妈妈	māma	n.	mother	3	你好	nǐ hǎo		hello	1
	吗	ma	particle	(used to ask	2	你们	nĭmen	pron.	you (plural)	1
	买	măi	v.	questions) buy	8	年	nián	n.	year	12
					8	年龄	niánlíng	n.	age	4
	毛衣	máoyī	n.	sweater		年轻	niánqīng	adj.	young	4
	帽子	màozi	n.	hat	8	牛仔裤	niúzăikù	n.	jeans	8
		méi wèntí		no problem	6	女士	nűshì	n.	Ms	1
	没有	méiyŏu	V.	not have	7	P爬山	páshān	V.	climb a mountain	10
	毎	měi	pron.	every, each	8	拍照	pālzhào	V.	take photos	10
	美国	Měiguó	n.	US	2	排球	páiqiú	n.	volleyball	11
	妹妹	mèlmel	n.	younger sister	3	派对	pàiduì	n.	party	6
	门口	ménkŏu	n.	entrance, doorway	7	跑步	pǎobù	V.	jog	7
	秘书	mìshū	n,	secretary	3	朋友	péngyou	n.	friend	7
	明年	míngnián	n.	next year	6					

		PA	ART OF				PA	RT OF	WEST WAY	
		PINYIN SF	PEECH		JNIT		PINYIN SF	PEECH	_	UNIT
	便宜	piányi	adj.	cheap	8	谁	shéi	pron.	who	4
	漂亮	piàoliang	adj.	pretty	12	什么	shénme	pron.	what	1
		pīngpāngqiú		table tennis	11	生日	shēngrì	n.	birthday	6
	平方米	píngfāngmǐ	measure word	square metre	9	生日卡	shēngrìkă	n.	birthday card	7
Q	七月	Qīyuè	n.	July	6	省	shěng	n.	province	5
	骑	qí	V.	ride (bicycle, etc)	10	时候	shíhou	n.	time	11
	其他	qítā	pron.	others, other	11	时间	shijlān	n.	time	7
	7	qiān	num.	thousand	12	实习	shíxí	v.	work as an intern	12
	钱	qián	n.	money	8	市	shì	n.	city	5
	前边	qiánbian	n.	front	9	事	shì	n.	thing, matter	7
	潜水	qiánshuĭ	V.	dive	11	试	shì	v.	try	8
	请	qĭng	interj./ v.	please, invite	1	是	shì	v.	be	1
	请问	qĭngwèn		may I ask, excuse me	1	收到	shōudào	v.	receive	5
	球	qiú	n.	ball, ball game	11	收件箱	shōujiànxiāng	ın.	inbox	5
	区	qū	n.	district	5	手机	shŏujī	n.	mobile phone	5
	曲棍球	qūgùnqiú	n.	hockey	11	售货员	shòuhuòyuán	n.	shop assistant	8
	去	qù	v.	go	6	书	shū	n.	book	6
	去年	qùnián	n.	last year	6	书店	shūdiàn	n.	bookshop	8
	裙子	qúnzi	n.	skirt	8	暑假	shŭjià	n.	summer holiday	10
R	然后	ránhòu	conj.	then	10	帅	shuài	adj.	handsome	4
	人	rén	n.	people	2	双	shuāng	measure word	pair	8
	认识	rènshi	V.	know, get to know	1	说	shuō	v.	say	12
	E	rì	n.	date (written)	6	宿舍	sùshè	n.	dormitory	9
	日本	Rìběn	n.	Japan	2	岁	suì	n.	year(s) old	4
S	三里屯	Sänlítún	n.	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	10	他	tā	pron.	he, him	3
	商店	shāngdiàn	n.	shop	9	它	tā	pron.	it	10
	上班	shàngbān	v.	go to work	6	她	tā	pron.	she, her	3
	上个	shàngge		last	8	他们	tāmen	pron.	they, them	2
	上海	Shànghải	n.	Shanghai	4	太	tài	adv.	very, too	7
	上午	shàngwǔ	n.	morning	7	太太	tàitai	n.	Mrs	1

W	ORD	DINIVINI	PART OF	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF	MEANING	UNIT
泰	CANTE:	Tàiguó	SPEECH	Thailand	2	现在	xiànzài	n.	now	4
踢		tī	v.	play (with feet), kick	11	香港	Xiānggǎng	n.	Hong Kong	12
T·M	fiz.	tīxù	n.	T-shirt	8	想	xiǎng	V.	think, want	11
		tĭyùchăng	n.	stadium, sports	11	小姐	xiǎojiě	n.	Miss	1
条		tiáo	measure	ground	8	小时	xiǎoshí	n.	hour	11
	舞	tiàowů	word v.	dance	11	鞋	xié	п.	shoes	8
听		tīng	V.	listen	7	写	xiě	v.	write	7
	车场	tíngchēchǎr		car park	10	谢谢	xièxie	V.	thank you	5
	十岁学	tóngxué	n.	schoolmate	1	新	xīn	adj.	new	5
头		tóufa	n.	hair	4	新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	n.	Singapore	12
退		tuìchū	v.	exit, go back	5	新西兰	Xīnxīlán	n.	New Zealand	2
巫晚		wănfàn	n.	dinner	7	星期	xīngqī	n.	week	6
	上	wänshang	п.	evening	7	星期二	Xīngqī' èr	n.	Tuesday	6
往		wång	prep.	towards	9	星期六	Xīngqīliù	n.	Saturday	6
	球	wăngqiú	n.	tennis	11	星期日	Xīngqīrì	n.	Sunday (written)	6
	中	wéijin	n.	scarf	8	星期三	Xīngqīsān	n.	Wednesday	6
问		wèn	v.	ask	1	星期四	Xīngqīsì	n.	Thursday	6
	卷	wènjuàn	n.	questionnaire	11	星期天	Xīngqītiān	n.	Sunday (spoken)	6
我		wŏ			1	星期五	Xīngqīwŭ	n.	Friday	6
		wŏmen	pron.	I, me	6	星期一	Xīngqīyī	n.	Monday	6
	们口		pron.	we, us	6	姓	xìng	v./n.	surname, family	1
五四五		Wűyuè Xĩ' ān	n.	May Xi'an	12	性别	xìngbié	n.	name gender	11
		xībian	n.		9	姓名	xìngmíng	n.	full name	4
	边		n.	West	2	能猫	xióngmāo	n.	panda	4
	尼·胡	Xīní	n.	Sydney	11		. xiūli̇́gōng	п.	mechanic,	3
	望	xīwàng	V.	hope	4	休闲	xiūxián	n./v.	repairman leisure, have leisur	
	欢	xǐhuan	V.	like			xūyào		need	10
	手间人		n.	toilet, washroom		需要学	xuýdo	v. v.	study, learn	6
	个	xiàge		next	11		xuésheng		study, learn student	3
	午,	xiàwů	n.	afternoon	7	学生	xuéxião	n.	school	3
先	,生	xiānsheng	п.	Mr	9	学校	xuexido	П.	SCHOOL	2

	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD		PART OF	MEANING	UNIT
Y	颜色	yánsè	n.	colour	10	运动	yùndòng	n.	sports	7
	演员	yănyuán	n.	actor, actress	4	运动员	yùndòngyuá	n <i>n</i> .	athlete	4
	要	yào	V.	want	7	在	zài	prep.	at, in	2
	药店	yàodiàn	n.	pharmacy	9	早上好	zăoshang hảo		good morning	2
	爷爷	yéye	n.	grandfather	7	怎么	zěnme	pron.	how	9
	也	уĕ	adv.	also	3	怎么样	zěnmeyàng	pron.	how about	6
	野营	yĕyíng	V.	go camping	12	照片	zhàopiàn	n.	photo	3
	一点儿	yīdiǎnr	quantifie	ra little	8	这	zhè	pron.	this	3
	衣服	yīfu	n.	clothes	8	这边	zhèbian	pron.	this way	8
	一起	yīqĭ	adv.	together	7	这个	zhège	pron.	this	7
	医生	yīshēng	n.	doctor	3	这儿	zhèr	pron.	here	9
	一些	yīxiē	quantifie	rsome	10	这里	zhèli	pron.	here	8
	医院	yīyuàn	n.	hospital	3	真	zhēn	adv.	really, so	4
	一月	Yīyuè	n.	January	6	真的	zhēn de		really	6
	以后	yĭhòu	n.	after	12	知道	zhīdào	V.	know	4
	意大利	Yìdàlì	n.	Italy	10	只	zhĭ	adv.	only	12
	音乐	yīnyuè	n.	music	7	志愿者	zhìyuànzhě	n.	volunteer	12
	音乐会	yīnyuèhuì	n.	concert	7	中餐	Zhōngcān	n.	Chinese food	6
	银行	yínháng	n.	bank	9	中国	Zhōngguó	n.	China	2
	印度	Yìndù	n.	India	2	中文	Zhōngwén	n.	Chinese	1
	应该	yīnggāi	modal v.	should	12	中午	zhōngwǔ	n.	noon	7
	英格兰	Yīnggélán	n.	England	11	周末	zhōumò	п.	weekend	7
	英国	Yīngguó	n.	UK	2	主意	zhǔyi	n.	idea	12
	英语	Yīngyŭ	n.	English	7	住	zhù	v.	live	2
	赢	ying	V.	win	11	自行车	zìxíngchē	n.	bicycle	10
	邮局	yóujú	n.	post office	9	走	zŏu	V.	walk, go	9
	游览	yóulăn	v.	go sightseeing	10	足球	zúqlú	n.	football	11
	游泳	yóuyŏng	V.	swim	11	最	zuì	adv.	most	4
	有	yŏu	V.	have	7	昨天	zuótiān	n.	yesterday	6
	有名	yŏuming	adj.	famous	8	左右	zuŏyòu	n.	about	9
	远	yuăn	adj.	far away	8	坐	zuò	v.	take (a vehicle)	10
	月	yuè	n.	month	6	做	zuò	v.	do	3

# Discover China

# STUDENT'S BOOK ONE 学生用书1

No one could claim that learning Chinese is easy. Discover China recognizes the challenges that face students of the Chinese language and applies teaching and learning approaches to make learning effective, meaningful and enjoyable.

Discover China is a four-level Mandarin Chinese course specially designed for beginner to intermediate level students and employs a communicative approach to language learning. Emphasis is placed on pair work, group work and on a wide variety of speaking and listening activities to help students become confident Chinese language speakers.

- A communicative approach lets students learn by using the language in real-life situations, providing them with the tools they need to communicate in Chinese naturally
- Language in context presents key vocabulary and language points in situations where students will encounter them in real life
- Structured, effective learning based on the sequence 'presentation, practice and production' has activities move from controlled practice to personalized tasks, which facilitates effective learning of the language
- Inductive grammar teaching encourages students to discover the language rules of Chinese for themselves by identifying the patterns in targeted language samples
- Systematic vocabulary and grammar development through topic-based practice and extension exercises. The lexical syllabus is based on levels 1-4 of the HSK Proficiency Test and the grammatical syllabus takes students up to the Vantage level (level B2) of the Common European Framework
- Supported by free online resources including teacher's books, assessment tasks, unit quizzes and extra character writing sheets — the support materials allow both teacher-guided learning in the classroom and self-teaching at a pace suited to the individual student

Components of Discover China levels 1, 2, 3 and 4:

- Comprehensive Student's Book + Audio CD
- Workbook + Audio CD
- Supportive resource website: www.mydiscoverchina.com



Student's Book 2



Student's Book 3



Student's Book 4



A SO

Macmillan-FLTRP
Chinese Character Dictionary





